

E 208

.S54

1834

Copy 1







A HISTORY

OF THE

# AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

PUBLISHED IN LONDON UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF THE

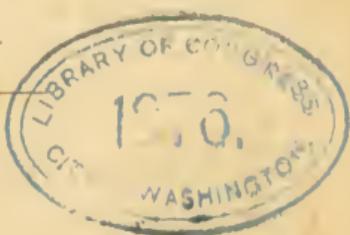
SOCIETY FOR THE DIFFUSION OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION.

WITH QUESTIONS: BY AN EXPERIENCED TEACHER;

AND

ADDITIONAL NOTES.



COLUMBUS, OHIO:

PUBLISHED BY ISAAC N. WHITING.

1834.

Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1834,  
By ISAAC N. WHITING,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Ohio.

L  
C 54 8

C. SCOTT, Printer, Columbus, O.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

THE following work was originally prepared for the London Library of Useful Knowledge, and published in several of its numbers. It bears all the marks of extensive investigation of the subject and impartiality in treating it, which distinguish the works of that Society, and is alike nervous, elegant, and perspicuous in its style. Perhaps there is no work extant which embodies in so small a compass so full and interesting account of those eventful times which marked the rise and progress of the American Revolution. But while it will be found exceedingly interesting to readers generally, it is undoubtedly especially well calculated to form a most useful School Book. And with the view of rendering it still more valuable in this respect, to the youth of this country, and of impressing its important facts still more deeply on their minds, a series of *Questions* has been prepared expressly for this edition, with considerable care and attention, by an old, experienced teacher. A number of valuable notes, designed to illustrate more clearly some of the more important leading events, has also been added, taken chiefly from Holmes's Annals of America and Hale's History of the United States. The Constitution of the United States, with the amendments, has been inserted as an Appendix. With these additions it is believed there is no work of the kind to be found which can be more profitably studied by the rising generation, or which is better adapted to form a valuable text book for our Schools. It is readily confessed that few occurrences have ever transpired in connexion with the various revolutions of governments and empires, whose influences have been more extensive and salutary throughout the civilized world than the American Revolution. It formed indeed a new era in the history of mankind, and the principles which were then contended for and successfully established, the untiring ardor and stern patriotism which distinguished the actors of those times, should be early and familiarly made known, in order that we may duly prize our inestimable institutions.—The publisher of this edition would therefore especially recommend the work to the attention of parents and teachers.

*The narrative of the enterprise of Sergeant Champe, from page 170 to the end of Section 32, is copied from Lee's Memoirs, and was intended to be inscribed as a note.*

## CONTENTS.

---

		<i>Page</i>
Section	1. Settlement of British America.....	5
	2. War of 1756.....	10
	3. Resolutions of the House of Commons, 10th of March, 1764.....	14
	4. Stamp Act, March 22, 1765.....	16
	5. Repeal of the Stamp Act, 10th of March, 1766—New attempt at Taxation, and resistance to the same.....	21
	6. Petition and Remonstrance, 1773.....	32
	7. Boston Port-Act, and Repeal of the Charter of Massachusetts.....	39
	8. Removal of the Seat of Government from Boston.....	48
	9. First acts of the Assembly at Concord.....	50
	10. Opening of the Congress at Philadelphia.....	54
	11. Address of the House of Commons, 9th of February, 1775.....	57
	12. Affair at Lexington, 19th of April, 1775.....	66
	13. Battle of Bunker's Hill.....	69
	14. Union of the thirteen Provinces—Hancock appointed President, and Washington Commander-in-Chief.....	73
	15. Invasion of Canada—Death of Montgomery.....	77
	16. Evacuation of Boston, March 17, 1776.....	80
	17. Declaration of Independence.....	86
	18. Capture of Long Island.....	96
	19. Evacuation of New York.....	99
	20. Battle of Trenton.....	102
	21. Capture of Philadelphia.....	106
	22. Burgoyne's Expedition.....	109
	23. Failure of Burgoyne's Expedition.....	114
	24. Convention of Saratoga.....	121
	25. Treaty with France.....	123
	26. Rejection of Lord North's Overtures.....	128
	27. Arrival of the French Fleet.....	137
	28. Campaign of 1779.....	140
	29. Siege and Capitulation of Charleston.....	147
	30. Defeat of Gates's Army by Lord Cornwallis.....	152
	31. Arrival of the French Auxiliaries under Rochambeau.....	160
	32. Treason of Arnold, and death of Andre.....	163
	33. Campaign of 1781—Defeat of Greene, by Lord Cornwallis.....	190
	34. Campaign of 1781 continued—Defeat of Lord Rawdon by General Greene.....	196
	35. Further Events of the Campaign—Preparations for the Siege of New York.....	235
	36. Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis.....	240
	37. Provisional Treaty of Peace.....	246
	38. Conclusion.....	252
APPENDIX—	The Constitution of the United States.....	259

# AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

---

## SECTION I.

### SETTLEMENT OF BRITISH AMERICA.

The discovery of the western hemisphere, effected by the bold and persevering genius of Christopher Columbus, in the year 1492, gave a new impulse to European activity; and the splendid conquests of the Spaniards in the West Indies, and in South America, excited the emulation of the other maritime powers of Christendom. Our ancestors were not dilatory in their endeavors to enter upon this new path to glory and wealth; for we find that in the year 1498, John Cabot, by virtue of a commission from Henry VII., took formal possession, in the name of that monarch, of a considerable portion of the continent of North America. No attempt however, was made to establish a colony in that country till the reign of Queen Elizabeth, when Sir Humphrey Gilbert and Sir Walter Raleigh, in the years 1578 and 1584, formed settlements there, which were soon wasted by famine, by disease, and by the arrows of the natives, who, as heathens, were counted as nothing in the royal grants under which the adventurers acted. The first permanent British settlement was established in the reign of King James I., under whose auspices a company of adven-

---

Who discovered America? In what year?

Who took possession of a part of North America?

When?

turers built Jamestown, on the northern side of James river. This colony, however, continued for a long time in a feeble state. It was founded A. D. 1607; and, though it received continual accessions of new settlers, its population, in the year 1670, amounted to no more than 40,000 souls.

The Virginian colonists were prompted to quit their native country by the hope of bettering their temporal condition. A higher motive gave rise to the colonization of the northern portion of the new continent. After the passing of the Act of Uniformity, in the reign of Elizabeth, the Puritans had suffered a grievous persecution; to escape from which a small body of them had fled, in the year 1606, into Holland. Unwilling, however, entirely to sever themselves from the land which gave them birth, they applied to their sovereign, King James, beseeching him to permit them to establish themselves in his North American dominions, in the full exercise of liberty in religious matters. With this their request, in its full extent, James refused to comply. All that they could obtain from him was a promise that he would connive at their infringements of the statutes, the operation of which had driven them into voluntary exile. On the faith of the royal word to this effect, they embarked, to the number of 101, in the month of September, 1620, and arriving at Cape Cod in the following November, soon afterwards fixed themselves in a place of settlement, which they called New Plymouth, and which, it must be observed to their honor, they purchased from the natives. Dreadful were the difficulties with which this handful of reli-

---

Where was the first permanent settlement made?

At what time?

What inducements prompted the Virginian colonists to quit their native country?

When and where was the second settlement made?

Who were the settlers of Plymouth? Their number?

What motive induced their emigration?

gionists had to struggle; landing as they did in the depth of winter, and exposed as they were, notwithstanding their conciliatory disposition to the hostility of the natives. But, supported by the principles of piety, and determined at any price to purchase religious freedom, they maintained their ground; and being from time to time recruited by new migrations of their persecuted brethren, they, by degrees, spread themselves over the province of Massachusetts.

It too often happens that religion produces dissension, and that those who have suffered persecution, when they have obtained power, become persecutors themselves.—This was the case with the principal inhabitants of the colony of Massachusetts. Falling into the common error of the times, in thinking that uniformity of sentiment on the subject of religious doctrines was required by the truth of the gospel, and by a regard to the peace and welfare of society, they established it as a rule of government, 'that no man should be admitted to the freedom of their body politic, but such as were members of some of their churches;' and they afterwards passed a resolution, 'that none but such should share in the administration of civil government, or have a voice in any election.' In this instance, however, as in many others, evil was productive of good. The discontented sectarians sought other settlements, and founded the colonies of Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire.

Whilst the once persecuted Protestants thus gave a sad proof that their sufferings had not taught them mercy, it was reserved for a Roman Catholic nobleman to give to the new world a striking example of this happy docility.

---

With what difficulties had they to struggle?

What was a common error of the times?

What rule of government did they establish?

What became of the discontented sectarians?

In the year 1632, Lord Baltimore obtained a charter for a new colony, the first settlers of which consisted chiefly of Roman Catholic gentlemen; and, having established his band of emigrants in Maryland, he so exerted his influence with the members of the assembly of the new province, that they laid it down as a fundamental principle of their constitution, 'that no persons professing to believe in Christ Jesus should be molested in respect of their religion, or in the free exercise thereof.' His lordship's enlightened policy was eminently successful. Under the nurture of religious liberty, his infant settlement soon advanced rapidly towards maturity.

In the reign of Charles II., royal charters of the most liberal tenor were granted to Connecticut, Rhode Island, and Providence Plantations; and patents were also granted to Lord Clarendon and the Duke of York, bestowing on the former a right to form plantations in the district now comprehending North and South Carolina and Georgia, and delegating to the latter the same right as respecting New York and New Jersey; and finally, a patent was issued, authorizing the celebrated William Penn to colonize Pennsylvania and Delaware.

The English emigrants who settled in North America were a class of people very different from the Spaniards, who subdued the southern continent. They did not leave their native shores for the purpose of invading and plundering rich provinces and wealthy cities; but they sought prosperity by the painful arts of industry and economy. Purchasing land from the aborigines, they at first devoted

---

By whom, and when, was Baltimore settled?

What was his policy? Was it successful?

What charters were granted? What patents were issued during the reign of Charles II.?

By whom was South America subdued?

themselves to the culture of the soil; and in process of time, those who continued to reside on the sea-shore, or on the banks of navigable rivers, addicted themselves to commerce. Their success in this pursuit is evinced by the fact, that though in the year 1704, the imports of the province of Pennsylvania amounted only to £11,499 sterling, in 1772 they were increased to the value of £507,909, and in the same year the whole of the exports from Great Britain to her North American colonies amounted to upwards of £6,000,000 sterling.

Though each colony had its separate constitution, the principles of freedom pervaded them all. In some provinces the governors and the magistrates were elected by the people; and in those, the governors and chief officers of which were appointed by the crown, the power of these functionaries was controlled by assemblies, the members of which were chosen by the freeholders, who were too numerous to be bribed, and too independent in their circumstances to be swayed by influence. Throughout the whole of the Union there was not found a single proprietor of a borough, nor an interest to nurture the principles of bigotry and passive obedience. When the first settlers took possession of the country, they brought with them all the rights of Englishmen, and those rights they were jealous in maintaining. Their interior concerns were regulated by their representatives in assembly; but in consideration of their origin, and of the protection against foreign enemies, which they received from the mother country, they cheerfully submitted to the obligation of exclusively trading

---

How did the English differ from them?

What principles pervaded the constitution of each colony?

How were the governors and magistrates elected in some of the provinces?

How in others?

How did they regulate their interior concerns?

with her, and of being bound by all the laws touching commerce, which might be passed by the British parliament. The limits of the authority of parliament they were not critical in canvassing, with one exception, namely, claiming to be independent of that body in the matter of internal taxation. They maintained, conformably to one of the most established principles of the British constitution, that an assembly in which they were not represented had no right to burden them with imposts.

---

## SECTION II.

### WAR OF SEVENTEEN HUNDRED AND FIFTY-SIX.

The growing power of the British colonies in America was strikingly evinced in the year 1745, when a force of 5000 men, raised and equipped by the single State of Massachusetts, and acting in concert with a British armament from the Indies, took Louisburg from the French. The success of this expedition so much excited the jealousy of the government of France, that, after the termination of the war in which Louisburg was taken, they dispossessed the Ohio Company of the settlements which it had formed on the river of that name, alleging that the territory in question was part of the dominions of his Most Christian Majesty. It was on this occasion that George Washington, then a major in the Virginian militia, first drew his sword in hostility. At the head of 300 men he defeated a party of

---

What is a principle of the British constitution?

Did the colonists maintain this?

What expedition is here mentioned?

What was the result?

What was a consequence of the capture of Louisburg?

What is related of Geo. Washington?

French; but being afterwards attacked by a superior force he was obliged to surrender, receiving, however, honorable terms of capitulation.

A war with France now seeming inevitable, a general meeting of the governors and leading members of the provincial assemblies was held at Albany, in the State of New York. This meeting proposed, as the result of its deliberations, 'that a grand council should be formed of members, to be chosen by the provincial assemblies; which council, together with a governor to be appointed by the crown, should be authorized to make general laws, and also to raise money from all the colonies, for their common defence.' The British government seem to have viewed this proposal with jealousy, as a step towards independence. They disapproved of the projected mode of the election of the members of the council; nor were they satisfied with the plan of raising the requisite supplies by acts of the colonial legislatures; and they proposed that 'the governors of all the colonies, attended by one or two members of their respective councils, should, from time to time, concert measures for the whole colonies; erect forts and raise troops, with a power to draw upon the British treasury in the first instance; but to be ultimately reimbursed by a tax to be laid on the colonies by act of parliament.' This counter proposal was strenuously opposed by the colonists, who refused to trust their interests to governors and members of councils, since almost the whole of the former, and the great majority of the latter, were nominated by the crown. As to the plan of raising taxes in the colonies by the au-

---

What meeting was held at Albany?

What was its object?

How was the proposition viewed by the English government?

What did the British government propose?

How did the colonies receive it?

thority of the British parliament, they rejected it in the most peremptory manner. In the discussions which took place on this occasion, Dr. Franklin took an active part, and in a letter to Mr. Shirley, governor of Massachusetts, as Dr. Ramsay observes, 'he anticipated the substance of a controversy, which for twenty years employed the pens, tongues, and swords of both countries.' In his correspondence with the governor, the American patriot intimated his apprehension, 'that excluding the *people* from all share in the choice of the grand council, would give extreme dissatisfaction, as well as the taxing them by act of parliament, where they have no representation. 'It is,' observes he, with equal candor and good sense,—'it is' very possible that this general government might be as well and faithfully administered without the people as with them; but where heavy burdens are to be laid upon them, it has been found useful to make it, as much as possible, their own act; for they bear better, when they have, or think they have, some share in the direction; and when any public measures are generally grievous, or even distasteful to the people, the wheels of government move more heavily.' On the subject of the general characters of the governors of the colonies, to whom it was thus intended to delegate extraordinary powers, Dr. Franklin thus expressed himself, in terms well worthy the attention of all ministers who are invested with the appointment of such functionaries;—'Governors often come to the colonies merely to make fortunes, with which they intend to return to Britain; are not always men of the best abilities or integrity; have many of them no estates here, nor any natural connexion with us, that should make them heartily concerned for our welfare; and might possibly be fond of raising and keeping up more forces than

---

What American patriot? What were his apprehensions?

With what views did governors often come to the colonies?

necessary, from the profits accruing to themselves, and to make provisions for their friends and dependents.' The opposition which their project experienced, induced the British government to withdraw it, and the colonies and the mother country for some time longer acted together in union and harmony. The consequence of this was, that under the vigorous administration of Mr. Pitt, the war, begun in 1756, was terminated by a treaty signed in 1763; according to the articles of which, Canada was ceded to Great Britain by France, and the two Floridas by Spain.

The North American colonies, in general, entered into the war of 1756 with such zeal, that some of them advanced funds for its prosecution to a greater amount than the quota which had been demanded of them by the British government. Others of them, however, the State of Maryland for instance, had, from local and accidental causes neglected to contribute their share to the requisite supplies. This circumstance, in all probability, led British statesmen to wish to establish a system, by means of which the resources of the colonies might be made available without the necessity of the concurrence of their local legislatures.—Accordingly, Mr. Pitt is said to have told Dr. Franklin, that, when the war closed, if he should be in the ministry, he would take measures to prevent the colonies from having a power to refuse or delay the supplies which might be wanting for national purposes.' This declaration is certainly at variance with the doctrines which Mr. Pitt maintained when the question of colonial taxation was afterwards discussed in parliament. But at the latter period that great statesman was no longer minister; and he is not the only politician who has held different language when in and out of power.

---

What distinguished British minister is named?

What were the conditions of the treaty?

What is it said Mr. Pitt told Dr. Franklin?

## SECTION III.

RESOLUTIONS OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS, 10TH OF MARCH,  
1764.

Whatever might be the motives of their conduct, the British ministry, in the year 1764, began to manifest a narrow and jealous policy towards the North American colonies. For a long series of years the commerce of the eastern States had been most beneficially extended to the Spanish and French colonies; to which they transported great quantities of British manufactures, the profits on the sale of which were divided between themselves and their correspondents in the mother country. This course of trade, though not repugnant to the spirit of the navigation laws, was contrary to their letter. Of this the British ministry took advantage; and by the activity of their revenue cutters, they put a stop to the traffic in question, to the detriment and ruin of many merchants, not only in America, but also in Great Britain. In September, 1764, indeed, they caused an act to be passed, authorizing the trade between the North Americans and the French and Spanish colonies, but loading it with such duties as amounted to a prohibition, and prescribing that all offenders against the act should be prosecuted in the Court of Admiralty, where they were deprived of a trial by jury. As an accumulation of the grievances which the colonists felt from this act, its preamble contained the following words of fearful omen: 'Whereas it is just and necessary that a revenue be raised in America, for defraying the expenses of defending, pro-

---

What was the preamble?

What policy was manifested towards the colonies in 1764?

Of what did the British ministry take advantage?

What act was passed in 1764?

tecting, and securing the same, We, the Commons, &c., towards raising the same, give and grant unto your Majesty,' &c.

It is believed by competent judges that the colonists, however disposed to resent this encroachment on their constitutional rights, would have submitted without resistance to the provisions of the act as regulations of trade and commerce. But the ministry soon took a bolder step, by proceeding to impose a direct internal tax upon the colonies by authority of parliament. This measure was vindicated on the following grounds, that the pressure of the payment of the interest of the national debt weighed so heavily on the British community, that it was expedient that by every proper means this burden should be lightened; that a considerable portion of this debt had been contracted in the furnishing of supplies for the defence of the North American colonies; that it was just and reasonable that those colonies should contribute their proportion towards its liquidation; and that the authority of parliament was competent to bind them so to do. The idea of relieving the public burdens by the taxation of distant colonies, was of course, very popular throughout the British nation; and so little was the right of parliament to impose such taxation at first questioned in Britain, that on the 10th of March, 1764, a resolution to the following effect passed the House of Commons, without any remark, 'That towards farther defraying the said expenses, it may be proper to charge certain stamp duties in the said colonies and plantations.' Nothing, however, was immediately done in pursuance of this resolution; as ministers were in hopes that the apprehension of the passing of an act founded on it would induce the colonists

---

What step did the ministry next take?

On what grounds was this measure vindicated?

What resolution was passed on the 10th of March, 1764?

What were the ministers in hopes of?

to raise a sum equivalent to the expected produce of such act, by bills passed in their respective legislative assemblies; but in these hopes they were disappointed. When intelligence of the resolution for laying a tax on stamps arrived in America, the colonists were filled with alarm and indignation. They declared internal taxation of the colonies by the authority of parliament to be an innovation and an infringement on their rights and liberties. If parliament was authorized to levy one tax upon them, it was authorized to levy a thousand. Where, then, was the security of their property, or what protection could they expect for their dearest interests, from a body of men who were ignorant of their circumstances; between whom and themselves there was no bond of sympathy, and who, indeed, had a direct interest in removing the weight of taxation from their own shoulders to those of the colonists? They were entitled, they affirmed, to all the rights of British subjects, of which the most valuable was exemption from all taxes, save those which should be imposed upon them by their own freely chosen and responsible representatives. Influenced by the feelings and motives implied in these declarations, instead of passing tax bills, they voted petitions and remonstrances to parliament and to the throne.

---

## SECTION IV.

STAMP ACT, MARCH 22, 1765.

The supplications and complaints of the colonists were disregarded. In the month of March, 1765, a bill for laying a duty on stamps in America was brought into the

---

How were the colonies affected with the news of the "stamp act"?

What rights did they declare themselves entitled to?

What did they do to obtain redress?

House of Commons by Mr. Grenville. This bill was supported by Mr. Charles Townsend, who is reported to have concluded his speech in its favor in the following words:—‘And now will these Americans—children planted by our care, nourished up by our indulgence, till they are grown to a degree of strength and opulence, and protected by our arms—will they grudge to contribute their mite to relieve us from the heavy weight of that burden which we lie under?’ To this invidious appeal to the pride and the prejudices of the members of the House of Commons, Colonel Barre thus energetically replied:—‘They planted by your care! No! your oppressions planted them in America.—They fled from your tyranny to a then uncultivated and inhospitable country, where they exposed themselves to almost all the hardships to which human nature is liable, and, among others, to the cruelty of a savage foe, the most subtle, and, I will take upon me to say, the most formidable of any people upon the face of God’s earth; and yet, actuated by principles of true English liberty, they met all hardships with pleasure, compared with those they suffered in their own country, from the hands of those who should have been their friends. They nourished up by your indulgence! they grew by your neglect of them. As soon as you began to care for them, that care was exercised in sending persons to rule them in one department and another, who were, perhaps, the deputies of deputies to some members of this House, sent to spy out their liberties, to misrepresent their actions, and to prey upon them—men whose behaviour, on many occasions, has caused the blood of those sons of liberty to recoil within them—men promoted

---

What was done by Mr. Grenville in 1765?

Who supported this bill?

What did he say in support of it?

What was said in reply? By whom?

to the highest seats of justice; some who, to my knowledge, were glad, by going to a foreign country, to escape being brought to the bar of a court of justice in their own. They protected by your arms! they have nobly taken up arms in your defence, have exerted their valor, amidst their constant and laborious industry, for the defence of a country whose frontier was drenched in blood, while its interior parts yielded all its little savings to your emolument. And, believe me, remember I this day told you so, that same spirit of freedom which actuated that people at first, will accompany them still; but prudence forbids me to explain myself further. God knows I do not at this time speak from any motives of party heat; what I deliver are the genuine sentiments of my heart. However superior to me in general knowledge and experience, the respectable body of this House may be, yet I claim to know more of America than most of you, having seen and been conversant with that country. The people, I believe, are as truly loyal as any subjects the king has, but a people jealous of their liberties, and who will vindicate them, if ever they should be violated. But the subject is too delicate—I will say no more.'

In the House of Lords the bill met with no opposition; and on the 22d of March it received the royal assent. In adopting the stamp-act as a method of taxing the colonies, ministers flattered themselves that the nullity of all transactions in which the stamps prescribed by the new law were not used would insure its execution. In this confidence they postponed the commencement of its operation to the month of November, 1765. This was a fatal error on their part. Had they prescribed its enforcement immediately on its arrival in America, the colonists might, in

their consternation, have been awed into compliance with its provisions; but the long interval between its arrival and its execution, gave them ample time to organize their opposition against it. Of this they fully availed themselves. On the 28th of May, the assembly of Virginia passed strong resolutions against the stamp-act, the substance of which was readily adopted by the other provincial legislatures. Popular pamphlets were published in abundance, in reprobation of the power thus assumed by the British parliament; and the proprietors of newspapers, whose journals were destined to be burdened with a stamp duty, raised against the obnoxious statute a cry, which resounded from Massachusetts to Georgia. The oppressive measures of ministers were canvassed in town-meetings and in every place of public resort; and the limits of the obedience due to the parent country were freely and boldly discussed in every company. In these proceedings the colony of Virginia led the way, by passing in the House of Burgesses, at the motion of Mr. Patrick Henry, the following resolutions: 1st, 'That the first adventurers—settlers of this his Majesty's colony and dominion of Virginia—brought with them, and transmitted to their posterity, and all other his Majesty's subjects, since inhabiting in this his Majesty's said colony, all the liberties, privileges, and immunities that have at any time been held, enjoyed, and possessed by the people of Great Britain;—2dly, 'That by two royal charters, granted by King James I., the colonies aforesaid are declared to be entitled to all liberties, privileges, and immunities of denizens, and natural subjects, to all intents and purposes, as if they had been abiding and

---

What did the Legislature of Virginia do?

What took place from Massachusetts to Georgia?

What of Patrick Henry?

Repeat the *first* resolution, the *second*?

born within the realm of England;—3dly, ‘That his Majesty’s liege people of this his ancient colony have enjoyed the right of being thus governed by their own assembly, in the article of taxes and internal police, and that the same has never been forfeited or yielded up, but been constantly recognized by the king and people of Britain;’—4thly, ‘Resolved, therefore, that the general assembly of this colony, together with his Majesty or his substitutes, have, in their representative capacity, the only exclusive right and power to lay taxes and imposts upon the inhabitants of this colony, and that every attempt to vest such power in any other person or persons whatsoever than the general assembly aforesaid, is illegal, unconstitutional and unjust, and hath a manifest tendency to destroy British as well as American liberty;’—5thly, ‘Resolved, that his Majesty’s liege people, the inhabitants of this colony, are not bound to yield obedience to any law or ordinance whatever, designed to impose any taxation whatever upon them, other than the laws or ordinances of the general assembly aforesaid;’—6thly, ‘Resolved, that any person who shall, by speaking or writing, assert or maintain that any person or persons, other than the general assembly of this colony, have any right or power to impose, or lay any taxation on the people here, shall be deemed an enemy to this his Majesty’s colony.’

The heat engendered by the debates, which in various colonies issued in resolutions to the tenor of the foregoing, at length broke out in acts of violence. The populace of Boston attacked the houses of the officers of government, and destroyed their furniture. Similar excesses took place in some of the other colonies; and the general antipathy of

---

Repeat the *third* resolution, the *fourth*, the *fifth* and *sixth*.  
What did the populace of Boston do?

the public against the act sheltered the perpetrators of these outrages from punishment.

These ebullitions were followed by more regular and more effective proceedings on the part of the American patriots. On the 6th of June the assembly of Massachusetts, sensible of the necessity of union to the maintenance of their rights and liberties, invited the other colonial legislative bodies to send deputies to a general congress to be holden at New York on the second Tuesday of October, for the purpose of deliberating on the steps necessary to be taken in the existing circumstances. This summons was readily answered by all the colonies, except those of Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, which, however, heartily approved of the purposed measures, but were prevented by their respective governors from meeting for the purpose of electing deputies to attend the congress. The representatives of nine colonies met at the time and place appointed, and after mature deliberation agreed upon a declaration of their rights and a statement of their grievances, and also drew up and signed petitions to the king and to both houses of parliament. Similar steps were taken individually by the colonies which had been prevented from sending deputies to the congress.

---

## SECTION V.

### REPEAL OF THE STAMP-ACT, 10TH OF MARCH, 1766.—NEW ATTEMPT AT TAXATION, AND RESISTANCE TO THE SAME.

The first of November, the day on which the stamp-act was to commence its operation, was ushered in throughout

---

What took place on the 6th of June?

How many colonies omitted to attend this Congress? Why?

What did this congress agree upon?

What occurred on the 1st of November?

the colonies by the funereal tolling of bells. In the course of the day, various processions and public exhibitions were made, all indicative of the abhorrence in which the detested statute was universally held. By common consent, the act was utterly disregarded, and not a stamp was bought to legalize any transaction. Nor did the Americans content themselves with this sullen opposition to the measures of ministers. They entered into solemn resolutions not to import any British manufactured goods, till the stamp-act was repealed; and an association was formed to oppose the act by force of arms. The latter step had no immediate effect; but the non-importation agreement brought such distress upon the British manufacturers, that they besieged parliament with petitions against the measures which had been adopted for the taxing of the colonies. Thus assailed by the clamors of the colonists and by the complaints of the suffering British merchants, his Majesty's government, at the head of which was now placed the Marquess of Rockingham, for a time wavered at the view of the unpleasant alternative which was set before them, of either repealing or enforcing the obnoxious statute. The former measure was grating to the pride of the nation at large, and the latter evidently involved in its prosecution the danger of a civil war. During this period of hesitation, the state of the colonies was frequently discussed in parliament. It was, in particular, the prominent subject of debate at the opening of the session on the 17th of December, 1765. On this occasion Mr. Pitt seems to have exerted all the energies of his powerful mind to avert the mischiefs which he beheld impending over his country. 'It is a long time, Mr. Speaker,' said he, 'since I have attended in parliament. When the resolution was taken in the House to tax America, I

---

What resolutions were entered into?

Who pleaded the cause of the colonies in Parliament, 1765?

was ill in bed. If I could have endured to have been carried in my bed, so great was the agitation of my mind for the consequences, I would have solicited some kind hand to have laid me down on this floor, to have borne my testimony against it. It is now an act that has passed; I would speak with decency of every act of this House, but I must beg the indulgence of the House to speak of it with freedom. I hope a day may be soon appointed to consider the state of the nation with respect to America. I hope gentlemen will come to this debate with all the temper and impartiality that his Majesty recommends, and the importance of the subject requires—a subject of greater importance than ever engaged the attention of this House, that subject only excepted, when, nearly a century ago, it was the question whether you yourselves were to be bound or free. In the mean time, as I cannot depend upon health for any future day, such is the nature of my infirmities, I will beg to say a few words at present, leaving the justice, the equity, the policy, the expediency of the act to another time. I will only speak to one point—a point which seems not to have been generally understood—I mean to the right.—Some gentlemen seem to have considered it as a point of honor. If gentlemen consider it in that light, they leave all measures of right and wrong, to follow a delusion that may lead to destruction. It is my opinion that this kingdom has no right to lay a tax upon the colonies. At the same time I assert the authority of this kingdom over the colonies to be sovereign and supreme in every circumstance of government and legislation whatsoever. They are the subjects of this kingdom, equally entitled with yourselves to all the natural rights of mankind, and the peculiar privileges of Englishmen. Equally bound by its laws, and equally participating of the constitution of this free country, the Americans are the sons—not the bastards of England.—Taxation is no part of the governing or legislative power.

The taxes are a voluntary gift and grant of the Commons alone. In legislation the three estates of the realm are alike concerned; but the concurrence of the peers and the crown to a tax is only necessary to close with the form of a law. The gift and grant is of the Commons alone. In ancient days the crown, the barons, and the clergy possessed the lands. In those days the barons and clergy gave and granted to the crown. They gave and granted what was their own. At present, since the discovery of America, and other circumstances admitting, the Commons are become the proprietors of the land. The crown has divested itself of its great estates. The church (God bless it) has but a pittance. The property of the Lords, compared with that of the Commons, is as a drop of water in the ocean; and this House represents those Commons, the proprietors of the lands; and those proprietors virtually represent the rest of the inhabitants. When, therefore, in this House we give and grant, we give and grant what is our own. But in an American tax what do we do? 'We, your Majesty's Commons of Great Britain, give and grant to your Majesty'—what?—our own property?—No! We give and grant to your Majesty the property of your Majesty's Commons of America! It is an absurdity in terms.' 'There is,' said Mr. Pitt, towards the close of his speech, 'there is an idea in some, that the colonies are virtually represented in this House. I would fain know by whom an American is represented here? Is he represented by any knight of the shire in any county in this kingdom? Would to God that respectable representation was augmented to a greater number! Or will you tell him that he is represented by any representative of a borough—a borough which, perhaps, no man ever saw. This is what is called the rotten part of the constitution. It cannot continue a

century—if it does not drop it must be amputated. The idea of a virtual representation of America in this House is the most contemptible idea that ever entered into the head of a man.' Mr. Pitt concluded by declaring it as his opinion, that whilst the Americans were possessed of the constitutional right to tax themselves, Great Britain, as the supreme governing and legislative power, had always bound the colonies by her laws, by her regulations and restrictions in trade, in navigation, in manufactures, in every thing except that of taking their money out of their pockets without their consent. Of this broad assertion, of the extent of British power over the colonies, Mr. Grenville, the patron of the stamp-act, took advantage, and maintained that there was no difference in principle between the right to impose external and internal taxation. He asserted that the protection from time to time afforded to America by Britain was a just ground of claim to obedience on the part of the latter from the former, and asked when America was emancipated from the allegiance which she owed to the parent State? Provoked by Mr. Grenville's sophistry, and irritated by his insolence of tone and manner, Mr. Pitt gave utterance to the following declaration—a declaration, no doubt, well calculated to animate the spirit of freedom on the other side of the Atlantic. 'The gentleman tells us that America is obstinate; America is almost in open rebellion. I REJOICE THAT AMERICA HAS RESISTED. Three millions of people, so dead to all the feelings of liberty, as voluntarily to submit to be slaves, would have been fit instruments to make slaves of the rest of their fellow subjects.'

Thus did Mr. Pitt plead the cause of the colonies with all the fervor of commanding eloquence. In the course of a

---

Who followed Mr. Pitt in debate?

What was Mr. Pitt's reply?

few days the same cause was maintained by Dr. Franklin, on the plain and unadorned, but convincing principles of common sense. In the month of February, that celebrated philosopher was examined at the bar of the House of Commons touching the state of America, and the probable effect upon the inhabitants of that country of the imposition of stamp duties. In this examination he evinced an accurate and extensive knowledge of facts—of facts which were calculated to convince any reasonable mind that it was morally impossible to enforce the stamp-act in the colonies; and that an attempt to effect that object would be productive of the worst consequences to the prosperity of Britain.— The train of interrogatories furnished, of course, by himself, afforded him an opportunity of stating his opinions in his accustomed clear and simple manner; and the cross-examination which he underwent on the part of members hostile to the claims of the colonies, gave an occasion for the display of that coolness of temper and promptitude of perception by which he was distinguished. His examination concluded with the following pithy questions and replies:—

**Q.** What used to be the pride of the Americans? **A.** To indulge in the fashions and manufactures of Great Britain

**Q.** What is now their pride? **A.** To wear their old clothes over again till they can make new ones.\*

\* On the 10th of November, 1776, on motion of the Duke of Richmond, that Mr. Penn, whom he saw below the bar, should be examined, in order to establish the authenticity of the petition presented by him, several curious particulars, relative to much controverted subjects, came out upon the examination of this gentleman.

He was personally acquainted with almost all the members of Congress, had been governor of the colony, and resided in the city in which they assembled and

---

What celebrated philosopher is here spoken of?

Before whom was he examined?

What questions were put to him?

What were his answers?

The distress of the commercial and manufacturing interests now co-operating with parliamentary arguments and eloquence, the new ministers, who were not so deeply com-

held their deliberations, and had every opportunity, from office, family connexion, locality of property, and an extensive acquaintance, to obtain the fullest information of the state of affairs in America, as well as of the temper and disposition of the people.. It was also evident, that his discernment was equal to the forming a just estimate of things, and there could scarcely be a suspicion of partiality in favor of any measure which could tend to American independence, as the great fortune of his family, if not wholly lost, must be much impaired by such an event. Among the remarkable parts of his testimony was an absolute negative to the supposition or charge, that any design of independence had been formed by the Congress. He declared, that the members composing that body had been fairly elected; that they were men of character, capable of conveying the sense of America; and that they had actually conveyed the sense of their constituents; that the different provinces would be governed by their decisions in all events; that the war was levied and carried on by the colonists, merely in defence of what they thought their liberties; that the spirit of resistance was general, and they believed themselves able to defend their liberties against the arms of Great Britain; that the colony of Pennsylvania contained about sixty thousand men able to carry arms—that of these, twenty thousand had voluntarily enrolled themselves to serve without pay, and were armed and embodied before the governor's departure. Being questioned as to the nature of that volunteer force, he said that it included the men of best fortune and character in the province, and that it was generally composed of men who were possessed of property either landed or otherwise; that an additional body of four thousand five hundred minute men had since been raised in the province, who were to be paid when called out upon service; that they had the means and material of casting iron cannon in great plenty; that they cast brass cannon in Philadelphia, and they made small arms in great abundance and perfection; that the colonies had been dissatisfied with the reception of their former petitions; but that they had founded great hopes upon the success of that which he brought over, that it was styled the *Olive Branch*, and that he had been congratulated by his friends upon his being the bearer of it; that it was greatly to be feared, that if conciliatory measures were not speedily pursued, they would form connexions with foreign powers, and that if such connexions were once formed, it would be found a matter of great difficulty to dissolve them. Being asked, 'whether the people of the different provinces were now in a state of freedom?' he said that they thought themselves so; whether 'the most opulent inhabitants would not prefer freedom under this country to what they now enjoy?' he answered, that they would prefer it to any other state of freedom; and that, notwithstanding

mitted as their predecessors on the subject of the stamp-act, at length made up their mind to give way. Before the examination of Dr. Franklin, indeed, namely, on the 21st of January, 1766, a motion had, under their auspices, been made in the Commons in a committee of the whole House to the following effect;—‘That it is the opinion of the committee, that the House be moved, that leave be given to bring in a bill to repeal an act passed in the last session of parliament, entitled, “An act for granting and applying certain stamp duties, and other duties in the British colonies and plantations in America towards farther defraying the expenses of defending, protecting, and securing the same, and for amending such parts of the several acts of parliament relating to the trade and revenues of the said colonies and plantations, as direct the manner of determining and recovering the penalties and forfeitures therein mentioned.”’ To this resolution the advocates of the obnoxious statute moved an amendment, by which it was proposed to leave out the word ‘repeal,’ and insert ‘explain and amend.’ But this amendment was rejected by a majority of one hundred and eighteen.

ing their determination to support the measures of the Congress, they wished for a reconciliation with this country. He denied it is being an object of the Congress to throw off the regulations of their trade, and acknowledged that the most thinking men in Pennsylvania were of opinion, that a refusal of the present petition would be a bar to all reconciliation.

It was observed, with some severity of animadversion, as a singular circumstance in the present situation of affairs, what appeared upon this examination, that neither the Secretary of State, who received the petition, nor any other minister or person in authority, had, since the arrival of the witness in England, proposed a single question to him, or desired the smallest information relative to the state of affairs in America or the disposition or temper of the people. This circumstance was used to give countenance to the charge so often repeated by the opposition, that a system had been chalked out for the administration, which they were obliged blindly to pursue, and to act in it merely as machines, without being at liberty to form an opinion as to justice, eligibility, or consequence.—*Annual Register, Vol. XIX., 1776.*

On the 24th of February, the above mentioned proceedings were confirmed by the passing a resolution similar to the foregoing one, but with a view, no doubt, of saving the dignity of the nation and of his Majesty's government; this second resolution was accompanied by others, approving of the conduct of such of the colonists as had used their best exertions for the enforcement of the stamp-act in America; indemnifying those 'who, by reason of the tumults and outrages in North America, had not been able to procure stamped paper since the passing of the act for laying certain duties on stamps in the colonies, and had incurred penalties and forfeitures, by writing, ingrossing, or printing on paper, vellum, or parchment, not duly stamped, as required by the said act.' A bill, founded on these resolutions, was accordingly brought into the House. This bill, after warm debates, passed both Houses of Parliament, and received the royal assent on the 16th of March, 1766. The ostensible grounds for the adoption of this measure, as expressed by preamble to the act, was the inexpediency of the tax on stamps, and by way of guardedly reserving the main point in question, namely, the right of the British parliament to impose internal taxes on the colonies, the repeal act was accompanied by a declaratory act in which it was asserted, 'that the parliament had, and of right ought to have, power to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever.' This broad and unqualified claim on the part of the British legislature, was little calculated to satisfy such of the American colonists as had maintained the struggle against the British ministry upon deep and well considered principle. These, no doubt, regarded it with suspicion and dislike, as containing the germ of future encroachments upon their rights and privileges. But it seems to have made little im-

pression upon the minds of the American public. In their joy for the repeal of the stamp-act, and in their eagerness to resume their ordinary occupations, the colonists regarded it as a harmless sally of wounded pride, and cheerfully renewed their commercial intercourse with the mother country.

But the evil genius of Britain still fostered in the cabinet the idea of raising a revenue in America. Lord Rockingham having been superseded by the Duke of Grafton, Charles Townsend, the then chancellor of the exchequer, brought into the House of Commons, in the year 1767, a bill, which was quickly passed into a law, for granting duties in the British colonies on glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea. This proceeding again kindled a blaze throughout the provinces. In their estimation, it proved that the declaratory act was not intended to be a dead letter, and it gave rise to bold and acute discussions as to the distinction between tax-bills and bills for the regulation of trade. To add to the alarm of the colonists, a board of commissioners of customs was established at Boston; which step convinced them that the British government intended to harass them with a multiplicity of fiscal oppressions. They therefore again had recourse to petitions, remonstrances, and non-importation agreements. The seizure of the sloop Liberty, belonging to Mr. Hancock, a popular leader, for an infringement of the revenue laws, incited the populace of Boston to renewed acts of violence, which drove the commissioners of the customs to take shelter in Castle William. To suppress this spirit of insubordination, his Majesty's ministers stationed some armed vessels in the harbor, and quartered two regiments of foot in the town

---

How were the Americans affected, by the repeal of the stamp act?

In 1767, what kindled a blaze in America?

What added to the alarm?

What excited the populace of Boston?

of Boston. The intention of the British government to send this force to Boston having been announced, the selectmen of ninety-six towns of the State of Massachusetts, met at Faneuil Hall, in that town; but this assembly, which had excited great alarm among the friends of government, merely recommended moderate measures, and then dissolved itself. The day after the breaking up of this convention, the troops arrived, and landed without opposition under the protection of the guns of the armed vessels in the harbor.

The intelligence of the refractory spirit thus manifested by the inhabitants of Boston, produced such irritation in the British parliament, that in February, 1769, both Houses concurred in an address to his Majesty, prompting him to vigorous measures against all persons guilty of what they were pleased to denominate treasonable acts; and beseeching him, in pursuance of the powers contained in an obsolete statute of the 35th of Henry VIII., to seize the offenders, and cause them to be tried by a special commission within the realm of Great Britain. This imprudent suggestion was encountered by strong resolutions on the part of the provincial assemblies; and the colonists again had recourse to non-importation agreements, and, in some instances, sent back to Great Britain cargoes of goods which had actually arrived. Thus the distresses of the British manufacturers were renewed; and ministers were induced, by their earnest remonstrances, to repeal all the newly imposed duties, except that on tea. This reservation being a practical assertion of the right of parliament to impose in-

---

What meeting was held at Faneuil Hall?

What were their proceedings?

In 1769, what was done in the British Parliament?

What was done in the colonies?

What effect had these proceedings in England?

ternal taxes on the American States, was very odious to the colonists, who, however, relaxed their associations so far as to allow the importation of all articles except tea, the use of which commodity they forbore, or supplied themselves with it by smuggling.

---

## SECTION VI.

### PETITION AND REMONSTRANCE, 1773.

Thus was tranquillity restored to most of the colonies. But the presence of the troops in the town of Boston was a perpetual source of irritation in the province of Massachusetts. The Bostonians regarded the soldiers with an evil eye, as the instruments of tyranny designed to be used for the destruction of their liberties, and availed themselves of every opportunity which occurred to annoy and insult them. In resisting a violent act of aggression, a party of the military were obliged to fire on the populace, of whom three were killed and five dangerously wounded. In times of public excitement, nothing is more irritating to the populace, and nothing more painful to men of cultivated minds, than the interference of the military. When that interference is attended with fatal consequences, the frenzy of the people rises to the utmost height. Such was the case with the inhabitants of Boston. On hearing of the melancholy event, some obscure individuals caused the drums to beat to arms, and the townsmen assembled to the amount of some thousands. They were, however, happily appeased by the intervention of several patriotic leaders, whose zeal was allayed by prudence, and in consequence of whose interference with the Lieutenant-Governor the obnoxious

---

What was a source of irritation to the Bostonians?

What caused a public excitement?

What was the consequence of this excitement?

troops were sent out of the town. Artful means were, however, resorted to for the purpose of keeping alive their resentment. On the morning of the day appointed for the burial of the slain, most of the shops in Boston were shut. The bells of that town, of Charlestown, and Roxbury, rang out muffled peals. Mournful processions moving from the houses of the murdered dead, as they who had fallen by the fire of the military were denominated, united with the corpses at the spot where they had met their fate. Here forming into a body, they marched six a-breast, followed by the carriages of the gentry, through the main streets to the place of interment.

Immediately after the affray, which was productive of such sad consequences, Captain Preston, the officer who commanded the party who had fired upon the people, had been committed to prison, together with a number of private soldiers who were implicated in that act. The firing had taken place on the 5th of March, and though the trial of the accused did not take place till the following November, there might have been reason to apprehend that, in appearing, for a decision on a case of life and death before a Boston jury, they would run the greatest hazard of falling victims to infuriated prejudice. But, in this instance, the Bostonians gave evidence of their English descent. In capital cases Englishmen, in modern times at least, have almost uniformly exercised an impartial administration of the law. Such was the temper which was manifested by the court and jury on the trial of Captain Preston and his comrades. After a patient investigation of the case, all the prisoners were acquitted of murder, and two being found guilty of manslaughter, were immediately burnt in the hand and discharged. It is a fact not to be omitted, that they were defended, and zealously defended,

---

Describe the interment.

In what did the Bostonians give evidence of their English descent?

by the celebrated John Adams and Josiah Quincy, than whom there did not exist more ardent advocates of the cause of American freedom.\* The former of these gentlemen, in warning the jury against giving way to popular impressions, expressed himself in the following energetic terms:—“The law, in all vicissitudes of government, fluctuations of the passions, or flights of enthusiasm, will preserve a steady, undeviating course; it will not bend to the uncertain wishes, imaginations, and wanton tempers of men. To use the words of a great and worthy man, a patriot and a hero, an enlightened friend to mankind, and a martyr to liberty—I mean Algernon Sidney—who, from his earliest infancy, sought a tranquil retirement under the shadow of the tree of liberty, with his tongue, his pen, and his sword,—“The law,” says he, “no passion can disturb. It is void of desire and fear, lust and anger. It is *mens sine affectu*; written reason; retaining some measure of the divine perfection. It does not enjoin that which pleases a weak, frail man, but, without any regard to persons, commands that which is good, and punishes evil in all, whether rich or poor, high or low. It is deaf, inexorable, inflexible.” Yes,’ said Mr. Adams, ‘on the one hand, it is inexorable to the cries and lamentations of the prisoners; on the other, it is deaf, deaf as an adder, to the clamors of the populace.’

Notwithstanding this firmness on the part of the counsel for the prisoners, and notwithstanding the impartiality of the jury and of the judge, which latter, in his summing up

\* It is also a fact worthy of notice, that the counsel for the crown, Samuel Quincy, Esq. Solicitor-General, was the brother of Josiah Quincy, and on the termination of the siege of Boston, in 1776, he left the country with other loyalists, and held the office of attorney for the crown in the island of Antigua, until his death in 1789.

on the trial of Captain Preston, did not hesitate to say,—‘I feel myself deeply affected that this affair turns out so much to the shame of the town in general,’ ministers took advantage of the disturbed state of the public mind, by making it a pretext for rendering the governor and judges of Massachusetts independent of the province, by transferring the payment of their salaries from the assembly to the crown. In consequence of this proceeding, Governor Hutchinson, who had never been popular, became still more than ever an object of dislike. Such being the disposition of the people of Massachusetts towards their chief magistrate, their indignation against him was raised to the highest pitch in the year 1773 by an incident, the consequences of which had a most unhappy aspect on the fortunes of Great Britain. The servants of government naturally look with a jealous eye, upon the bold asserters of popular rights; and as naturally imagine that they shall most gratify their masters by the recommendation of a steady and active resistance against what they are apt to deem the encroachments of popular claims. In this spirit Mr. Hutchinson and Mr. Oliver, the former the Governor and the latter Lieutenant-Governor of the colony of Massachusetts, had addressed some letters to individuals who had put them into the hands of his Majesty’s ministers, in which letters they vituperated the American patriots, called upon government to adopt more vigorous measures than they had hitherto done in support of their authority, recommended restraints upon liberty and an infringement of charters, and even the ‘taking off’ of the principal opponents to British domination. These letters having come into the possession of Dr. Franklin, he thought it his duty, as agent of the House of

Representatives of Massachusetts, to send them to his constituents. Their perusal excited, as might have been expected, the indignation of the assembly, the members of which unanimously resolved, 'That the tendency and design of the said letters was to overthrow the constitution of this government, and to introduce arbitrary power into the province;' and, moreover, passed a vote, 'that a petition should be immediately sent to the King, to remove the Governor, Hutchinson, and the Lieutenant-Governor, Oliver, forever from the government of the province.' Dr. Franklin, after having transmitted the petition in question to Lord Dartmouth, the then Colonial Secretary, appeared to support it in person at the Council Chamber on the 11th of January, 1774; but, finding that he was to be encountered by counsel employed on behalf of the accused functionaries, he prayed that the hearing of the case might be adjourned for the space of three weeks, which was granted him. In the mean time speculation was all alive as to the means by which Dr. Franklin had obtained possession of the letters; and a Mr. Whateley and a Mr. Temple, both connected with the colonial office, mutually suspecting each other of the unfaithful communication of them, a correspondence took place between those gentlemen, which ended in a duel, in which Mr. Whateley was dangerously wounded. For the prevention of further mischief of this sort, Dr. Franklin published, in the 'Public Advertiser,' a letter exonerating both the combatants from blame in this case, and taking the whole responsibility of the procuring the documents on

---

What raised the people's indignation to the highest pitch in 1773?

What was resolved in the House of Representatives of Massachusetts?

To whom was the petition sent in London?

Between whom was a duel fought?

What was the occasion of this duel?

What did Dr. Franklin do to prevent further mischief?

himself. When the Doctor appeared again before the council in support of the Massachusetts petition, he was assailed by Mr. Wedderburne, who acted for the Governor and the Lieutenant-Governor, in terms of most elaborate abuse. ‘The letters,’ said the caustic advocate, ‘could not have come to Dr. Franklin by fair means. The writers did not give them to him, nor yet did the deceased correspondent. Nothing, then, will acquit Dr. Franklin of the charge of obtaining them by fraudulent or corrupt means, for the most malignant of purposes; unless he stole them from the person that stole them. This argument is irrefragable. I hope, my Lords, you will mark and brand the man, for the honor of this country, of Europe, and of mankind. Private correspondence has hitherto been held sacred in times of the greatest party rage, not only in politics, but religion. He has forfeited all the respect of societies and of men. Into what companies will he hereafter go with an unembarrassed face, or the honest intrepidity of virtue? Men will watch him with a jealous eye—they will hide their papers from him, and lock up their escrtoirs. He will henceforth esteem it a libel to be called a man of letters—*homo trium literarum.*\* But he not only took away the letters from one brother, but kept himself concealed till he nearly occasioned the murder of the other. It is impossible to read his account, expressive of the coolest and most deliberate malice, without horror. Amidst these tragical events, of one person nearly murdered, of another answerable for the issue, of a worthy governor hurt in his dearest interests, the fate of America in suspense,—here is a man, who, with the utmost insensibility of remorse,

\* Fur, thief.

stands up and avows himself the author of all. I can compare it only to *Zanga* in Dr. Young's '*Revenge*'—

..... 'Know, then, 'twas—I;  
I forged the letter; I disposed the picture.  
I hated, I despised, and I destroy.'

I ask, my Lords, whether the revengeful temper attributed, by poetic fiction only, to the bloody African, is not surpassed by the coolness and apathy of the wily American? Less fervid eloquence than this of Mr. Wedderburne's would have been sufficient to sway the decision of the council, who declared the petition of the Massachusetts assembly to be scandalous and vexatious. Franklin was dismissed from the office which he held of postmaster-general of the colonies. Wedderburne was afterwards advanced in his profession, till he attained the chancellorship and a peerage; and George III. lost thirteen provinces. Till this moment Franklin had labored for conciliation; but though, during the time of the hearing of the arguments before the council, he preserved his countenance unmoved, the insults of Wedderburne so exasperated his feelings, that when he left the council-room he declared to his friend Dr. Priestley, who accompanied him on this memorable occasion, that he would never again put on the clothes which he then wore till he had received satisfaction. He dressed himself in this 'well-saved' suit when he signed at Paris the treaty which forever deprived the crown of Great Britain of its dominion over the United States. It is only within these seven years that it has been ascertained, that Governor Hutchinson's letters were put into Franklin's hands by a Dr. Williamson, who, without any suggestion on his part,

---

How was the doctor affected?

What did he say to Dr. Priestley?

Who gave him the letters?

had procured them by stratagem from the office where they had been deposited.\*

---

## SECTION VII.

### BOSTON PORT-ACT, AND REPEAL OF THE CHARTER OF MASSACHUSETTS.

The determination of the colonists to use no tea which had paid duty was so generally persevered in, that seventeen millions of pounds of that commodity were accumulated in the warehouses of the East India Company. With a view of getting rid of this stock, and at the same time of aiding ministers in their project of taxing the North American colonies, the company proposed that a law should be passed authorizing them to receive a drawback of the full import duties on all teas which they should export. To this proposal the British government agreed, in hopes that, as by this arrangement the colonists, on paying the duty of three-pence per pound on the landing of the tea in their harbors, would be able to buy it at a cheaper rate than they could do from the contraband dealers, their patriotic scruples would be silenced by their love of gain. In this notion, however, minister were mistaken. Strong resolutions were entered into throughout the provinces, declaring, that whosoever should aid or abet in landing or vending the tea which was expected, ought to be regarded as an enemy to

\* This curious fact is stated, with many particulars, in a memoir of Dr. Williamson, by Dr. Hosaek, of New-York.

---

What determination was persevered in?

What was the consequence of this determination?

What proposal did the East India Company make to the ministers?

What resolutions were entered into throughout the provinces?

his country; and that committees should be appointed to wait on the agents of the East India Company, and to demand of them a resignation of their appointments. Terrified by these proceedings, a great majority of the consignees complied with this requisition; but in Massachusetts these agents, being the relatives and friends of the governor, and expecting to be supported by the military force stationed in Boston, were determined to land and offer for sale the obnoxious commodity. \*As the tea ships were

\* Notifications were immediately posted up, inviting every friend to his country to meet forthwith and concert united resistance to the arbitrary measures of Britain. A crowded meeting was held, and a resolution adopted, "that the tea should not be landed, that no duty should be paid, and that it should be sent back in the same vessel." A watch was also organized to prevent it from being secretly brought on shore. A short time was then allowed for the captain to prepare to return home with his cargo. Governor Hutchinson refused to grant him the requisite permission to pass the castle. Other vessels, laden with tea, arrived. The agitation increased, and on the 18th of December, the inhabitants of Boston and the adjoining towns assembled to determine what course should be pursued. At this important meeting, Josiah Quincy, desirous that the consequences of the measures to be adopted should be first seriously contemplated, thus addressed his fellow citizens:—'It is not, Mr. Moderator, the spirit that vapors within these walls that will sustain us in the hour of need. The proceedings of this day will call forth events which will make a very different spirit necessary for our salvation. Whoever supposes that shouts and hosannas will terminate our trials, entertains a childish fancy. We must be grossly ignorant of the value of the prize for which we contend; we must be equally ignorant of the power of those who have combined against us; we must be blind to that inveterate malice and insatiable revenge which actuate our enemies, abroad and in our bosom. to hope that we shall end this controversy without the sharpest conflicts—or to flatter ourselves that popular resolves, popular harangues, and popular acclamations, will vanquish our foes. Let us consider the issue; let us look to the end; let us weigh and deliberate, before we advance to those measures which must bring on the most trying and terrible struggle this country ever saw.' In the evening the question was put, 'Do you abide by your former resolution to prevent the landing of the tea?' The vote was unanimous in the affirmative. Application was again made to the governor for a pass. After a short delay, his refusal was communicated to the assembly. Instantly a person, disguised like an Indian, gave the war whoop from the gallery. At this signal, the people rushed out of the house and hastened to the

lying in the harbor, ready to land their cargoes, the leading patriots, apprehensive that if the tea were once warehoused, the opposition of the people to its sale might gradually give way, and deeming decisive measures absolutely necessary in the present circumstances, boarded the vessels, and emptied the tea-chests into the water.

The British ministry rejoiced that this outrage had occurred, and that it had occurred in the town of Boston, which they had long regarded as the focus of sedition, from whence a spirit of resistance to British authority was diffused throughout the colonies. It now lay at their mercy, as having been guilty of a flagrant delinquency, and as meriting exemplary punishment. Determined to chastise its mutinous inhabitants for their numerous delinquencies, and to bend them to submission, Lord North, then prime minister, on the 14th of March, made a motion in the House of Commons, 'That leave be given to bring in a bill for the immediate removal of the officers concerned in the collection and management of his majesty's duties and customs from the town of Boston, in the province of Massachusetts Bay in North America; and to discontinue the landing and discharging, lading and shipping of goods, wares, and merchandise, at the said town of Boston, or within the harbor thereof.' The deep silence which followed the announcement of this motion marked the sense of the House as to the

wharves. About twenty persons, in the dress of Mohawks, boarded the vessels, and, protected by the crowd on shore, broke open three hundred and forty-two chests of tea and emptied their contents into the ocean. Their purpose accomplished, the multitude returned without tumult to their habitations.

*Hale's United States.*

What became of the tea?

Who was prime minister?

What motion did he make to the House of Commons?

How was this motion received in the House?

serious consequences which it involved; but it met with no opposition, except on the part of Alderman Sawbridge and Mr. Dowdswell. Even Colonel Barre, the great advocate of the rights of the colonies, spoke in favor of it, and it passed without a division. No debate occurred on the first reading of the bill on the 18th of March; and the second reading, which took place on the 21st of the same month, was only interrupted by a few adverse remarks made by Mr. R. Fuller. On the 25th, a petition was presented against the bill, signed by several natives of North America, at that time resident in London; after the reading of which the House discussed its provision in committee. Mr. Fuller availed himself of this occasion to move, that, instead of the closing of the port of Boston, which measure, he argued, would be detrimental, not only to American, but also, to British interests, a fine should be imposed on the offending community. This amendment was opposed by the prime minister, who said that he was no enemy to lenient measures, but that it was evident that, with respect to the inhabitants of Boston, resolutions of censure and warning would avail nothing,—that it was then the time to stand out, to defy them, to proceed with firmness and without fear, and that they would never reform till severe measures were adopted. With a lamentable want of foresight his lordship thus proceeded: 'I hope that we every one feel that this is the common cause of us all; and unanimity will go half way to the obedience of the people of Boston to this bill. The honorable gentleman tells us, that the act will be a piece of waste paper, and that an army will be required to put it into execution. The good of this act is, that four or five frigates will do the business without

---

On the 25th what petition was presented?

What was Mr. Fuller's motion?

What did the prime minister say?

any military force.' With a similar blindness to futurity, Mr. Charles Jenkinson exclaimed, 'We have gone into a very expensive war for the attainment of America; the struggle which we shall now have to keep it will be of little expense.' Thus rash and short-sighted are statesmen when their passions obtain the mastery over their judgment! After a lengthened debate, in the course of which the bill was powerfully opposed by Mr. Burke and Mr. Dowdswell, it passed the Commons with but very few negatives; and having been hurried through the House of Lords, it finally received the royal assent, and was passed into a law.

The Boston port-act was speedily followed by still more alarming measures. The free constitutions of the American provinces had presented strong impediments against the views of his majesty and his ministers. Among these, the charter of Massachusetts was pre-eminent for the liberality of its principles. Being well aware, that whilst this charter subsisted he could never effectuate his designs, Lord North determined to set it aside. When Charles II. deemed it necessary for his purposes to abrogate the franchises of the city of London, and of other corporate towns in England, he attacked their charters by *quo warrantos*; but the process of law is tedious, and in this case the issue of legal proceedings might be uncertain. The minister, therefore, decided upon bringing the omnipotence of parliament to bear upon the contumacious inhabitants of the offending colony. Accordingly, on the 28th of March, 1774, on the allegation that an executive power was wanting in the province of Massachusetts, and that it was highly necessary to strengthen the hands of its magistracy, he

---

What was said by Charles Jenkinson?

Who opposed the bill?

What were those measures by which the Boston port-act was followed?

proposed to bring in a bill, authorizing the governor for the time being to act as a justice of the peace, and empowering him to appoint at his will and pleasure the officers throughout the whole civil authority, such as the provost marshal and the sheriffs; to which latter officers was to be delegated the nomination of juries, who had formerly been elected by the freeholders and inhabitants of the several towns of the province. It was also his lordship's intention to vest in the crown the appointment of the council, which, under the provisions of the ancient constitution, had heretofore been elected by the general court. The latter provision was introduced into the bill at the suggestion of Lord Gorge Germaine, who was pleased to say, that 'he would not have men of a mercantile cast every day collecting themselves together, and debating about political matters; he would have them follow their occupations as merchants, and not consider themselves as ministers of that country.' In pursuance of this suggestion, which was thankfully received by the premier, there were added to the bill severe restrictions on the holding of public town meetings. Leave was given to bring in the bill without a single objection, except on the part of Mr. Byng, the member for Middlesex; and though, in its progress through the House of Commons, many weighty arguments were urged against it, especially by Governor Pownall and Mr. Dowdswell, it was carried on the 2d of May, by a majority of 239 against 64 voices. In the House of Lords it was severely animadverted upon; but a division of 92 to 20 evinced that the majority of the peers of the realm entered heartily into the views of the ministry as to coercing the American colonies. The Duke of Richmond, however, and eleven other peers, protested against it for the follow-

---

What did this bill provide?

Who opposed it?

Who in the House of Lords protested against it?

ing reasons: 'Because, before the rights of the colony of Massachusetts Bay, which they derive from their charter, are taken away, the definite legal offence by which a forfeiture of their charter is incurred ought to have been clearly stated, and the parties heard in their own defence; and the mere celerity of a decision against it will not reconcile the minds of the people to that mode of government which is to be established upon its ruins. On the general allegations of a declaratory preamble, the rights of any public body may be taken away, and any visionary scheme of government substituted in their place. By this bill, the governor and council are invested with dangerous powers, unknown to the British constitution, and with which the king himself is not intrusted. By the appointment and removal of the sheriff at pleasure, they have the means of returning such juries as may best suit with the gratification of their passions and their interests; the life, liberty, and property of the subject are put into their hands without control. The weak, inconsistent, and injudicious measures of the ministry have given new force to the distractions of America, which, on the repeal of the stamp-act, were subsiding; have revived dangerous questions, and gradually estranged the affections of the colonies from the mother country. To render the colonies permanently advantageous, they must be satisfied with their condition, that satisfaction there is no chance of restoring, but by recurring to the principles on which the repeal of the stamp-act was founded.'

The Boston port-act, and the act for remodeling the Constitution of Massachusetts, were strong and severe measures,—measures which, it might have been conceived, would have set at rest any common jealousy of popular rights, and satisfied any ordinary thirst for vengeance.—But, whilst these acts were in progress, the British prime

---

Why did the duke and others protest against this bill?

minister held in reserve another phial of wrath to pour on the heads of the refractory colonists. On the 15th of April, he rose in his place and proposed a third bill, which, he hoped, would effectually secure the province of Massachusetts Bay from future disturbances. The tenor of this bill, which bore the plausible title of a bill 'for the impartial administration of justice,' was, that 'in case of any person being indicted for murder or any other capital offence committed in the province of Massachusetts in aiding the magistracy, the governor might send the person so indicted to another colony or to Great Britain for trial,'—the act to continue in force for four years. It was observed, that whilst Lord North was moving the House for leave to bring in this bill, and was attempting, in a short speech, to enforce its necessity, his voice faltered. This is not matter of surprise. His lordship was a good tempered and humane man; and it must have been repugnant to his better feelings to become the organ for the proposing of such atrocious measures. The introduction of this bill roused in opposition to it the energies of Colonel Barre, who had, however, unwillingly, acquiesced in the preceding laws of coercion. He saw clearly the drift of the proposed statute, and was well aware that the colonists would not submit to it. 'You may,' said he, 'think that a law founded on this motion will be a protection to the soldier who imbrues his hand in the blood of his fellow-subjects. I am mistaken if it will. Who is to execute it? He must be a bold man, indeed, who will make the attempt. If the people are so exasperated, that it is unsafe to bring the man who has injured them to trial, let the governor who withdraws him

---

What did the prime minister propose on the 15th of April?

What was the tenor of this bill?

Who opposed the bill?

What did he say?

from justice look to himself. The people will not endure it; they would no longer deserve the reputation of being descended from the loins of Englishmen if they did endure it.' Such was the bold language of an experienced soldier, who knew America well. But this warning voice was raised in vain. The views of the Court were adopted by both houses of parliament, and this last and most unconstitutional measure of coercion was passed into a law.

It might seem just and equitable that compensation should be made by a delinquent community for property destroyed within its precincts, and not unreasonable that a town which had perpetrated an open violation of fiscal law should be deprived, till it was reduced to a better spirit, of the privileges of a port. Nor is it improbable that, had the British ministry proceeded no farther in their measures of vengeance, the other commercial cities of the colonies would have regarded the humiliation of the people of Boston with indifference. But the attack upon the charter of Massachusetts filled the bosom of every North American with indignation and alarm. Charters they had been accustomed to consider as inviolable compacts between the king and his people; but if these could be annulled and abrogated by parliament, what province could deem its constitution safe from violation? And in the provision for the trial in Great Britain of individuals accused of murders committed in America, they saw an indemnity for every one who might avail himself of a plausible pretext to put to death any person who might be obnoxious to government. Such were the feelings of the colonists. But, on this side of the Atlantic, these invasions of the liberties of fellow subjects were regarded with unconcern, and even with satisfaction. The people of Great Britain generally care little about the internal state of the distant possessions of the crown.—

---

What filled the Americans with indignation and alarm?

How did the people in England view the transactions?

They at that time looked up to parliament with awe, as a threefold body vested with the attribute of omnipotence; and they made themselves a party in the quarrel, reprobating the refractory spirit of the colonies as a rebellion against the sovereign authority, of which they imagined that every individual Briton had a share.

---

### SECTION VIII.

#### REMOVAL OF THE SEAT OF GOVERNMENT FROM BOSTON.

When intelligence arrived at Boston of the strong proceedings of the British parliament and government, the patriots of Massachusetts cast an anxious eye on the sister colonies. They were well aware that, if left to themselves at this awful crisis, they must succumb to the power of the mother country; but they entertained hopes that a union of the provinces against what they regarded as ministerial oppression, would rescue their common liberties from destruction. To effect this union they used the utmost exertions of activity, skill, and prudence. The opposition to the stamp-act and to the duty on tea, had been carried on by means of committees of correspondence, which had established links of connexion throughout the whole of the British dependencies in North America. Of this organization they now availed themselves with the utmost promptitude; and, by the mission of agents of consummate ability, they roused the inhabitants of every district of continental America to a sense of their wrongs. Public meetings were held in every township of every province, in

---

On the receipt of this intelligence what did the patriots of Massachusetts do?

What were they well aware of?

What did they entertain hopes of?

Of what organization did the patriots of Massachusetts now avail them-

What did these committees do?

[selves?]

Where were public meetings held?

which it was resolved to make common cause with the people of Massachusetts, and to resist the claim of the British parliament to tax them without their consent. The steps to be taken in pursuance of these resolutions, they unanimously agreed to refer to a general congress, the speedy summoning of which they declared to be absolutely necessary to the public safety.

In the mean time, General Gage had arrived at Boston, invested with the united authority of governor and commander-in-chief of the forces. He was speedily followed by two regiments of foot, and by various other detachments, which gradually swelled his garrison to a number which was deemed amply sufficient to overawe the malcontents, and to enforce the execution of the obnoxious acts.—Soon after his arrival, he announced his intention of holding the general court of the colony at Salem after the 1st of June, the day appointed by the statute of the commencement of the operation of the Boston port-act. The blow thus struck seemed to common observers to be fatal to the inhabitants of that devoted town. Property was instantly depreciated to the lowest scale of value. Houses were deserted by their tenants; warehouses were emptied and abandoned; the quays were deserted; silence reigned in the ship-yards, and thousands of artificers wandered through the streets destitute of employ. But the sufferers bore their distresses with a sullen resolution. Not a murmur was heard against the democratic leaders, who might in a certain sense be regarded as the authors of their miseries;

---

What were the resolutions of these meetings?

Who arrived in Boston?

With what authority was he invested?

By what was he followed?

Where did he propose to hold the general court?

How did the Bostonians bear their distresses?

but their execrations of the British parliament were loud and violent. Contributions poured in from all quarters for their relief; and they were comforted by letters of condolence in their distresses, and of thanks for their steadiness. The inhabitants of Marblehead offered to accommodate the merchants of Boston with their warehouses, and the people of Salem, in an address to the governor, declared that they could not 'indulge one thought to seize on wealth, and raise their fortunes on the ruin of their suffering neighbors.'

---

## SECTION IX.

### FIRST ACTS OF THE ASSEMBLY AT CONCORD.

On the 7th of June, the governor held the general court of Massachusetts, at Salem; but finding that the popular leaders were prepared, on the first day of its meeting, to carry some most obnoxious motions, he promptly dissolved the assembly. This, however, he did not effect before it had nominated five deputies to meet the committees of other provinces at Philadelphia on the ensuing 1st of September.

The more indeed, he exerted himself to embarrass the proceedings of the patriots, the more decidedly did he find himself baffled by their vigilance and their ingenuity.— When, according to the provisions of the coercive statutes, he issued a proclamation prohibiting the calling of any town meetings after the 1st of August, 1774, an assembly

---

**By what were they relieved and condoled?**

**What did the inhabitants of Marblehead do?**

**What did the people of Salem declare?**

**What occurred on the 7th June?**

**Why did the governor dissolve the assembly?**

**What was done previously?**

**How was the governor baffled?**

of this kind was, nevertheless, held; and, on his summoning the selectmen to aid him to disperse it, he was encountered by the following notable specimen of special pleading, that the holding of the meeting to which he objected was no violation of the Act of Parliament, for that only prohibited the calling of town meetings, and that no such call had been made; a former legal meeting, before the 1st of August, having only adjourned themselves from time to time.' One consequence of these adjourned meetings was a 'solemn league and covenant,' whereby the parties who signed it bound themselves 'to suspend all commercial intercourse with Great Britain until the late obnoxious laws were repealed, and the colony of Massachusetts was restored to its chartered rights.' A proclamation by which the governor denounced this association as 'unlawful, hostile, and traitorous,' was treated with contempt. In another proclamation, published about this time, 'for the encouragement of piety and virtue, and for the prevention and punishing of vice, profaneness, and immorality,' the governor made especial mention of the vice of hypocrisy, as a failing which the people were admonished to eschew. No doubt, the staff of General Gage thought this an excellent satire upon the puritanism of the Bostonians. But the joke was ill-timed, and severed only to add fuel to the popular mind, which was already in a high state of inflammation. When in the month of August, Gage attempted to organize the new constitution of the colony, most of the counsellors whom he appointed refused to act, and the juries declined to serve under judges nominated by the crown. Dreading the most serious consequences from the obstinacy thus manifested by the people of Massachusetts, the governor

---

What was one consequence of these meetings?

What did General Gage do in the month of August?

Why did he not succeed?

thought it prudent to fortify Boston Neck, and to seize the powder deposited in the arsenal at Charlestown, which is a kind of suburb to Boston.\* These measures produced a general rising throughout the province, which was with difficulty repressed by the prudence of the leading patriots. This demonstration drove the governor and his revenue officers from the new seat of government to the proscribed town of Boston. Whilst these transactions were going on, the Congress, or union of several committees, had assembled at Philadelphia, and, as the first fruits of its deliberations, issued a declaration, that it 'most thoroughly approved the wisdom and fortitude with which opposition to wicked ministerial measures had been hitherto established in Massachusetts; and recommended perseverance in the same firm and temperate conduct, as expressed in the resolutions of the delegates from the county of Suffolk.' The tenor of these resolutions was, that no obedience was due to the restraining statutes. Emboldened by the approbation of Congress to act up to the spirit of these resolutions, a provincial assembly, held at Concord, of which Mr Hancock was president, after having in vain solicited the governor to desist from constructing a fortress at the entrance into Boston, in defiance of his Excellency's authority, appointed a committee to draw up a plan for the arming of the province. The members of this committee did not shrink from the discharge of their perilous duty. They gave instructions for the organizing of a species of partisans, under the name

\* To which it is now united by a bridge.

---

What then did he do?

What did these measures produce?

What declaration was issued by the Congress at Philadelphia.

What effect had it on the people of Massachusetts?

Who was president of the assembly at Concord?

What committee was appointed by it?

of minute men, the command of whom was conferred on Jedediah Prebble, Artemas Ward, and Seth Pomeroy, warriors whose puritanical names gave ominous foreboding of a determination of purpose and of an obstinacy of valor, which their future conduct did not belie. The assembling of the militia was delegated to a committee of safety; and a committee of supply was authorized to expend the sum of 15,000*l.* sterling, in provisions, military accouterments, and stores, which were accordingly provided, and deposited at Worcester and Concord. At a later meeting of the provincial congress, still bolder measures were adopted. Resolutions were then passed to raise an army of 12,000 men, and delegates were sent to the adjacent colonies to urge them to increase these forces to the number of 20,000. It was, moreover, determined that the British troops should be attacked if they marched in field equipment beyond Boston Neck. A circular letter was also issued requesting the clergy to aid the common cause by their prayers and exhortations. At this crisis the situation of the governor was far from being an enviable one. The reins of authority had fallen from his hands, and had been seized by the provincial congress, whose resolutions had throughout the province the force of laws. At the approach of winter he experienced the utmost difficulty in procuring materials or workmen to construct barracks for the sheltering of his troops. The straw which he purchased in the vicinity of the town was set on fire, and the timber which he had bought for the king's stores was seized or destroyed.—Nor was the spirit of open resistance confined to Boston.

---

Who were the commanders of these minute men?

Where were the provisions &c. deposited?

What measures were adopted at a later meeting?

What was the governor's situation?

In Rhode Island the people seized the public battery of forty pieces of cannon, and took the castle of Portsmouth, where they obtained a seasonable supply of powder.

---

## SECTION X.

### OPENING OF THE CONGRESS AT PHILADELPHIA.

These active measures, which amounted to a direct levying of war against the King, were provoked by the rigor exercised against the colony of Massachusetts. In the meantime, the deputies of eleven provinces had assembled in congress at Philadelphia, and were soon joined by delegates from North Carolina. Peyton Randolph was chosen president of this assembly, and Charles Thomson was appointed its secretary. After a slight controversy as to the mode of voting, which was at length determined to be taken by provinces, each province having one vote, the members proceeded with the utmost zeal and harmony to the arduous business before them. In the first place, they issued a declaration of rights, in which, whilst they claimed a total exemption from any species of internal taxation imposed by the British parliament, they professed their willingness to obey all the laws which might be enacted in the mother country for the regulation of trade. They protested against the introduction of a standing army into the colonies without their consent, as also against the violation of their chartered rights in the infringement of their an-

---

What was done in Rhode Island?

What did these measures amount to?

What took place in the mean time?

Who was chosen president, of this congress? Who Secretary?

In voting, what mode was adopted?

What was done in the first place?

In this declaration, what was claimed?

What was protested against?

cient constitutions. Enumerating the several acts by which they were aggrieved, they declared that till these acts were repealed, they and their constituents would hold no commercial intercourse with Britain; and with a view of over-awing the weak and the wavering, and the partisans of royal authority among their countrymen, they resolved that committees should be chosen in every county, city, and town, to observe the conduct of all people touching the suspension of trade with the mother country, and to publish, in gazettes, the names of those who violated this ordinance, as foes to the rights of British America. They also agreed upon an address to the British people, vindicating their resistance to oppression; and two memorials to the West India colonies and to the people of Canada, exhorting them to unite with their persecuted brethren in a steady opposition to the encroachments of arbitrary power. In laying their grievances before the throne, in a petition to the King, they professed sentiments of loyalty to his Majesty's person and authority; but complained of the miseries which had been brought upon them by the mal-administration of wicked ministers. 'We ask,' said they, 'but for peace, liberty, and safety. We wish not a diminution of the prerogative, nor do we solicit the grant of any new right in our favor. Your royal authority over us, and our connexion with Great Britain, we shall always carefully and zealously endeavor to support and maintain.' This address to the sovereign concluded in the following pathetic terms. 'We implore your Majesty, for the honor of Almighty God, for your own glory, for the interest of your family, for the

---

What was enumerated? What was declared?

What did they resolve upon?

Upon what did they agree?

In laying their grievances before the throne, what did they profess?

Of what did they complain?

What did they ask for?

How did their address conclude?

safety of your kingdoms and dominions, that, as the loving father of your whole people, connected by the same bonds of law, loyalty, faith, and blood, though dwelling in various countries, you will not suffer the transcendent relation formed by these ties to be farther violated by uncertain expectation of effects, which if attained, never could compensate for the calamities through which they must be gained.' These various documents were drawn up with great judgement and ability; and their dissemination throughout the union produced a powerful effect upon the feelings of the people,—preparing them for the most strenuous exertions in what they deemed to be the cause of justice and freedom. Their framers, however, did not rely upon their eloquence alone, to produce an effect favorable to their cause upon the people of Britain. Their non-importation agreements had produced the repeal of the stamp-act, and they trusted that the annunciation of similar resolutions would produce similar effects as to the removal of their late parliamentary grievances. The event proved that they were mistaken. The merchants trading to America composed a small fraction of the British community. A hostile ministry was all powerful in parliament—the pride of the King was touched—every individual Briton, in whose mouth the phrase *our* colonies was familiar, deemed himself, in some sort, sovereign over the North American plantations, and a cry almost unanimous was raised throughout the nation, that the mutinous contemners of the omnipotence of the legislature of the parent state must be reduced to obedience by the strong hand of coercion.

The Congress, after a session of about eight weeks, and after passing a resolution for the calling of another assem-

---

What effect had these documents on the people?

At this time what was the state of feeling in England?

How long did congress continue in session?

What resolution was passed before adjournment?

bly of the same nature, if necessary, in the ensuing May, dissolved themselves; and the members proceeded to further, in their respective provinces, the cause in which they were thus decidedly embarked. By their influence, operating upon minds ready prepared by perpetual discussions, both public and private, of the wrongs of the colonies, the recommendations of an assembly, invested with no legal authority, obtained the force of laws. The non-intercourse agreements were zealously adopted by the great mass of the people; and the few who ventured to dissent from the general voice, were proscribed as enemies to their country.

---

## SECTION XI.

### ADDRESS OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS, 9TH OF FEBRUARY, 1775.

When the petition from Congress to the king arrived in England, his Majesty had just met a new parliament, to which he had communicated information, in a speech from the throne, 'that a most daring spirit of resistance and disobedience to the laws unhappily prevailed in the colony of Massachusetts;' and at the same time intimated that he had taken the requisite steps to repress it. Notwithstanding this angry demonstration, hopes were, for a short time, entertained by the friends of America, that ministers would adopt measures of conciliation. The secretary of state, after submitting the petition of the general Congress to the cabinet council, presented it to the king, by whom, as he reported, it was graciously received, and was intended to be laid by him before his two houses of parliament; numerous petitions from the merchants and manufacturers of

---

What obtained the force of laws?

What did the king say in his speech to parliament?

How was the petition from Congress received by the king?

the principal towns in the kingdom, and from the West India planters, prayed for the adoption of a more lenient policy towards the North American colonies; all the eloquence of Lord Chatham was exerted in the house of peers to effect the same object; yet Lord North was determined to proceed in the course of coercion. The Rubicon was passed on the 9th of February, 1775, by the presentation by both houses of a joint address to the king, in which they stated it as their opinion, that 'a rebellion actually existed in the province of Massachusetts;' and, in the usual style, offered to hazard their lives and fortunes, 'in the maintenance of the just rights of his Majesty and the two houses of parliament.' In support of this address, an addition was voted to the military force, of 4,383 rank and file, and 2,000 seamen. An act was also passed to restrain the commerce of the eastern colonies to Great Britain, Ireland, and the British West Indies; and to prevent them from fishing on the banks of Newfoundland, under certain conditions, and for a limited time. The provisions of this act were soon afterwards extended to the provinces of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia, and South Carolina. It is to be remarked, that New York, Delaware, and North Carolina, did not on this occasion fall under the ban of ministerial interdiction. New York, where the government had more influence than in other colonies, had been tardy in joining the union; and Lord North flattered himself that, by forbearing to include that and the other

---

Who was Lord Chatham, and what of him?

What can you say of Lord North?

By what was the Rubicon passed?

To what is allusion here made?

In support of this address, what was done?

What act was also passed?

To what extent were its provisions afterwards extended?

What provinces were unaffected by this act?

two colonies abovementioned in the restraining act, he should sow amongst the associated provinces jealousies which would dissolve their connexion; but in this he was disappointed. So powerful was the spirit of patriotism in America, that the inhabitants of the exempted colonies disdained to avail themselves of the privileges which were reserved to them, and determined to share in the restrictions imposed on their brethren; and it was with severe mortification that the premier soon afterwards witnessed the presentation to the House of Commons of a petition and remonstrance from the assembly of New York, claiming exemption from internal taxation, and protesting against the dependence of governors and judges on the crown for their salaries and emoluments. A hearing had been refused to the petition of Congress, though it was individually signed, under the pretext that it emanated from an illegal meeting. The remonstrance of the New York assembly was not liable to this objection; but when a motion was made in the House of Commons that it should be brought up, it was lost by a stratagem of Lord North.

On the 20th of February, 1775, some time previously to the transaction which has just been related, his lordship had manifested some cunning, but little wisdom, in proposing a resolution to the effect, that when any of the colonies or provinces in America should make provision for contributing their proportion to the common defence, and for the support of their civil government (such proportion to be raised under the authority of the general court or general assembly of such province and colony,) 'it will be proper to forbear, in respect of such colony or province, to levy any duty or tax, except such duties as may arise for the regulation of commerce, which duties are to be carried

to the account of such colony or province.' The bill founded on this resolution was violently opposed by certain of the prime minister's habitual partisans, who insisted on it that the colonies should be taxed directly by the British parliament. It was also attacked by the opposition, who argued that as it reserved to the British government the right of apportioning the respective proportions which the provinces should raise for the general service, and left the disposal of the sums raised to parliament, it mattered little that the immediate application of the scourge of taxation should be left to the colonial assemblies, who would regard the bill as an insult and a wrong. The opposition made a right estimate of the feelings of the Americans. The bill passed into a law; but it was received throughout the Union with abhorrence and contempt.

It was in this session, viz: on the 22d of March, 1775, that Mr. Burke made his celebrated speech for conciliation with America,—a speech fraught with statesman-like views, expressed in language at once temperate and eloquent.—At the commencement of this deeply-studied oration, Mr. Burke, after observing that all former measures recommended by the ministry and adopted by parliament had served to no other purpose but to keep America in a state of agitation, intimated that it had been observed to him by an intelligent friend, that instead of limiting himself to criticisms or the plans of government, it was highly expedient that he should produce a plan of his own. Though he was aware, said he, that it argues little knowledge to hazard plans of government, except from a seat of authority, yet, as public calamity was a mighty leveler, he would now act upon his friend's suggestion. 'My proposition,'

---

What bill passed into a law?

How was it received?

What celebrated speech was made in the session of 1775?

proceeded he, 'is peace; not peace through the medium of war; nor peace to be hunted through the labyrinth of intricate and endless negotiations; nor peace to arise out of universal discord, fomented from principle in all parts of the empire; not peace to depend upon the judicial determination of perplexing questions, or the precise marking of the shadowy boundaries of a complex government. It is simple peace, sought in its natural course and in its ordinary haunts,—it is peace sought in the spirit of peace, and laid in principles purely pacific. I propose by removing the ground of the difference, and by restoring the former unsuspecting confidence of the colonies in the mother country, to give permanent satisfaction to your people, and, far from a scheme of ruling by discord, to reconcile them to each other in the same act, and by the bond of the very same interest which reconciles them to British government.' After laying down and enforcing the position that the proposal for reconciliation ought, in consideration of her strength, to come from Great Britain, Mr. Burke asserted, that the plan for conciliation ought to be guided, not by abstract theory, but by a regard to circumstances.—What, then, were the circumstances of the present case? In the first place, the discontented Americans amounted in number to two millions, a number which considered in mass, could not be regarded 'as a paltry excrescence of the State, or a mean dependant, who may be neglected with little damage, and provoked with little danger.' But, with the consideration of the population of America, it was requisite to combine mature reflection upon other circumstances; as, for instance, the commerce, the agriculture,

---

What is the substance of Mr. Burke's speech?

What was his first proposition?

How was it sought? By removing and restoring what?

What was the number of the Americans?

and the fisheries of the colonies. As to commerce, Mr. Burke proved by documentary evidence, that, at the beginning of the century, of six millions which constituted the whole mass of the export commerce of Britain, the colony trade was but one twelfth part; but that, by the last returns submitted to parliament, it appeared that, as a part of sixteen millions, it constituted considerably more than a third of the whole. In agriculture, he asserted that America was so prosperous that she was enabled to export vast quantities of gain for the supply of the mother country. As to the third head of consideration, 'no sea,' exclaimed the orator, 'but is vexed by the fisheries of the colonists, no climate that is not witness to their toils. Neither the perseverance of Holland, nor the activity of France, nor the dexterous and firm sagacity of English enterprise, ever carried this most perilous mode of hard industry to the extent to which it has been pushed by this recent people,—a people who are still, as it were, but in the gristle, and not yet hardened into the bone of manhood.' 'But,' continued Mr. Burke, 'some persons will say, such a country is worth fighting for,—true,—but fighting will not retain it. Force is uncertain, and, if successful, it will depreciate the object gained.' He warned the House to consider the temper and character of the people with whom many ill-advised individuals seemed so eager to contend. The North American colonists were jealous of their liberties. Their jealousy as to their rights they derived from their English origin; it was nursed by their popular legislatures,—it was also nursed by their religion. The great body of the colonists were dissenters; and the dissenting interests have

---

What did he prove of America, as to commerce? What as to agriculture?

What as to the fisheries?

What did he say of force and of their liberties?

What was the great body of the colonists? What interests had sprung up?

sprung up in direct opposition to all the ordinary powers of the world, and can justify that opposition only on a strong claim to natural liberty. ‘All protestantism,’ Mr. Burke acutely remarked,—‘All protestantism, even the most cold and passive, is a sort of dissent. But the religion most prevalent in our northern colonies, is a refinement on the principle of resistance; it is the dissidence of dissent, and the protestantism of the protestant religion.’ The spirit of freedom was, moreover, nurtured in the colonies, in general, by education; and in Virginia and the Carolinas by that pride which uniformly actuates the holders of slaves, ‘to whom freedom is not only an enjoyment, but a kind of rank and privilege.’ Their distance from the mother country likewise rendered the colonists less disposed to submit to the dictation of the parent State. ‘This happens in all forms into which empire can be thrown. In large bodies the circulation of power must be less vigorous at the extremities.’ A proud spirit of liberty having from these various causes been infused throughout the colonies, in consequence of which they have not only disobeyed our authority, but established an efficient authority of their own, by means of which a vast province has subsisted for near a twelvemonth, without governor, without public council, without judges, without executive magistrates, the question arises, how is this spirit to be encountered? Some politicians have in this emergency proposed to check the population of the colonies by stopping the grant of more lands by the crown. Others have advised that their maritime enterprises should be checked by the severity of restrictive laws; whilst a third class of counselors are sanguine in their expectations, that the Virginians and the

---

What did he say of their protestantism?

What had some politicians proposed? What had others? What a third class, &c.?

planters of the Carolinas will speedily be reduced to submission by the emancipation of their slaves. Some, again, went so far as to talk of prosecuting the refractory as criminal. After demonstrating at length the futility of these proposals, Mr. Burke affirmed, that the only method left of putting an end to existing troubles, was that of conciliation. The Americans, said he, complain of taxation,—I will not on this matter dispute the point of right, but that of policy. ‘The question is not whether you have a right to render your people miserable, but whether it is not your interest to make them happy. It is not what a lawyer may tell you, you may do, but what humanity, reason, and justice declare you ought to do.’ Having thus laid down the principle of his plan, Mr. Burke began to open it by declaring, that his main object was to admit the people of the colonies to an interest in the Constitution. The fact was, that the Americans did not object to the laws of trade; nor did they aim at any thing more than a release from taxation, imposed upon them by a legislative body in which their interests are not guarded by their representatives. Similar uneasiness was for a long time prevalent in Ireland, in Wales, and in the counties palatine of Chester and Durham. Now the agitations of Ireland were quelled by the establishment of a separate legislature for that country, whilst the feuds which prevailed in Cheshire and Durham were annihilated by the admission of representatives of those counties into the English parliament. Let a similar policy then be exercised towards America. In her case, let taxation and representation go hand in hand.

---

What did Mr. Burke affirm?

What did he say *was* the question?

What did he then declare?

What did he say was his object?

What did he say should go “hand in hand?”

But the distance between the colonies and the mother country precludes the Americans from sending representatives to the British legislature. What remains, then, but to recognize for the theory the ancient constitution and policy of this kingdom with regard to representation, and as to the practice, to return to that mode which a uniform experience has marked out to you as best, and in which you walked with security, advantage, and honor until the year 1763. 'My resolutions, therefore,' continued Mr. Burke, 'mean to establish the equity and justice of a taxation of America by *grant*, and not by imposition; to mark the *legal competency* of the colony assemblies for the support of their government in peace, and for the public aids in the time of war; to acknowledge that this legal competency has had a dutiful and beneficial exercise, and that experience has shown the benefit of their grants, and the futility of parliamentary taxation as a measure of supply.' After opening these points at considerable length, and with transcendent ability, Mr. Burke concluded by moving a series of resolutions in which their substance was embodied. This masterly speech, in the meditation and composition of which Mr. Burke, in the earnestness of his wish to point out to the members of the House of Commons the true line of colonial policy, seems to have chastised and checked the exuberance of his genius, was spoken to the members alone, as during the debate the standing orders for the exclusion of strangers were strictly enforced. It was answered by Mr. Jenkinson, who professed serious alarm at the proposition, that any public body, save parliament, was entitled to make grants of money to the crown. These constitutional scrupu-

---

What did his resolutions aim to establish?

By whom was this *masterly* speech answered?

G

ples had their due weight, and Mr. Burke's resolutions were negative by a majority of 270 to 78.

About this time, Dr. Franklin, in a kind of demi-official communication with ministers, endeavored to effect a reconciliation between the colonies and the parent State. In the discussions which took place with this view between the doctor and the agents of the ministry, most of the points in dispute were settled; but the obstinate refusal of the cabinet to restore the ancient constitution of Massachusetts broke off the conferences; and Dr. Franklin, despairing of the preservation of peace, returned to his native land, determined to share the fortunes of his countrymen, and, at all hazards, to devote his talents to the maintenance of their rights.

---

## SECTION XII.

### AFFAIR AT LEXINGTON, 19TH OF APRIL, 1775.

It has already been stated, that the Massachusetts patriots had resolved to attack the king's forces whenever they should march out of Boston. On the 19th of April, 1775, their adherence to this resolution was put to the test. With a view of seizing the military stores and provisions which the insurgents had collected at Concord, General Gage, on the night preceding that eventful day, detached from his garrison 800 picked men, under the command of Lieuten-

---

What was the fate of Mr. Burke's resolutions?

What of Dr. Franklin about this time?

What broke off the conferences?

What did the doctor do?

Who was the British General in Boston?

Whom did he send to Concord? For what object?

ant-Colonel Smith. These troops made a rapid march to the place of their destination, in hopes of taking the malcontents by surprise; but notwithstanding their precautions, the alarm was given throughout the country, and the inhabitants flew to arms. Between four and five o'clock on the morning of the 19th, the advanced guard of the royal troops arrived at Lexington, where they found about 70 of the American militia under arms, whom Major Pitcairn ordered to disperse; and on their hesitating to obey his commands, that officer discharged his pistol, and ordered his soldiers to fire. By the volley which ensued three or four of the militia were killed and the rest put to flight.— Lieutenant-Colonel Smith then proceeded to Concord, where he destroyed the stores of the insurgents, and then commenced his retreat towards Boston. He was not, however, permitted to make this retrograde movement without molestation. Before he left Concord he was attacked by the American militia and minute-men, who, accumulating by degrees, harassed his rear and flanks, taking advantage of every inequality of ground, and especially availing themselves of the stone walls which skirted the road, and which served them as entrenchments. Had not the detachment been met at Lexington by a body of 900 men, which General Gage had sent out to its support, under the command of Lord Percy, it would certainly have been cut off. The united British forces arrived, wearied and exhausted, at Bunker's Hill, near Boston, a little after sunset, having

---

- In what year did this take place?
- What happened at Lexington?
- What success did they meet with at Concord?
- Describe their return?
- Where did they arrive?
- What was their situation?

sustained a loss of 65 killed, 180 wounded, and 28 prisoners.\*

When Lord Percy, on his advance, was marching through Roxbury, his military band, in derision of the Americans, played the tune of 'Yankee Doodle.' His lord-

\* The following is a copy of a hand-bill issued immediately after the engagement at Concord and Lexington.

*A List of the names of the provincials who were killed and wounded in the late engagement with his majesty's troops at Concord, &c.*

#### KILLED.

##### *Of Lexington.*

\* Mr. Robert Munroe,  
\* Mr. Jonas Parker,  
\* Mr. Samuel Hadley,  
\* Mr. Jonathan Harrington,  
\* Mr. Caleb Harrington,  
\* Mr. Isaac Muzzy,  
\* Mr. John Brown,  
Mr. John Raymond,  
Mr. Nathaniel Wyman,  
Mr. Jedediah Munroe.

##### *Of Menotomy.*

Mr. Jason Russell,  
Mr. Jabez Wyman,  
Mr. Jason Winship.

##### *Of Sudbury.*

Deacon Haynes,  
Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ Reed.

##### *Of Concord.*

Capt. James Miles.

##### *Of Bedford.*

Capt. Jonathan Wilson.

##### *Of Woburn.*

\* Mr. Azael Porter,  
Mr. Daniel Thompson.

##### *Of Medford.*

Mr. Henry Putnam.

##### *Of Danvers.*

Mr. Henry Jacobs,  
Mr. Samuel Cook,  
Mr. Ebenezer Goldthwait,  
Mr. George Southwick,  
Mr. Benjamin Daland, jun.  
Mr. Jotham Webb,  
Mr. Perley Putnam.

##### *Of Salem.*

Mr. Benjamin Peirce.

##### *Of Charlestown.*

Mr. James Miller,  
Capt. William Barber's son.

##### *Of Brookline.*

Isaac Gardner, Esq.

##### *Of Cambridge.*

Mr. John Hicks,  
Mr. Moses Richardson,  
Mr. William Massey.

##### *Of Acton.*

Capt. Davis,  
Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ Hosmer,  
Mr. James Howard.

##### *Of Lynn.*

Mr. Abednego Ramsdell,  
Mr. Daniel Townsend,  
Mr. William Flint,  
Mr. Thomas Hadley.

ship observed a youth who appeared to be amused at this circumstance, and asking him why he laughed, received this answer: 'To think how you will dance by-and-by to the tune of 'Chevy Chase.' It had been too much the habit of the British to despise and insult the Americans as cowards; but the event of the march to Concord convinced them that the Massachusetts men were not deficient either in personal courage or in individual skill in the use of arms.

### SECTION XIII.

#### BATTLE OF BUNKER'S HILL, 16TH OF JUNE, 1775.

Blood having been thus drawn, the whole of the discontented colonies took prompt measures to resist the royal

#### WOUNDED.

##### *Of Lexington.*

Mr. John Robbins,  
Mr. John Tidd,  
Mr. Solomon Peirce,  
Mr. Thomas Winship,  
Mr. Nathaniel Farmer,  
Mr. Joseph Comee,  
Mr. Ebenezer Munroe,  
Mr. Francis Brown,  
Prince Easterbrooks, (a negro man.)

##### *Of Framingham.*

Mr. ——— Hemenway.

##### *Of Beverly.*

Mr. Nathaniel Cleaves.

##### *Of Bedford.*

Mr. John Lane.

##### *Of Medford.*

Mr. William Polly.  
*Of Lynn.*  
Mr. Joshua Felt,  
Mr. Timothy Munroe.  
*Of Danvers.*  
Mr. Nathan Putnam,  
Mr. Dennis Wallis.  
*Of Woburn.*  
Mr. George Reed,  
Mr. Jacob Bacon.

#### MISSING.

*Of Menotomy.*  
Mr. Samuel Frost,  
Mr. Seth Russell.

Those distinguished with this mark [\*] were killed by the first fire of the regulars.

What happened as Lord Percy marched through Roxbury?

What had been a habit with the British?

What effect had their march to Concord on them?

authority by force of arms. Volunteers enrolled themselves in every province; and throughout the whole Union the king's stores were seized for the use of the insurgents. The surprisal of Ticonderoga and Crown Point by a party from Connecticut, under the command of Colonel Allen, furnished them with upwards of 100 pieces of cannon, and a proportionable quantity of ammunition. Troops were gradually assembled in the towns and villages in the vicinity of Boston, so as to hold that town in a state of blockade. About the latter end of May, General Gage was reinforced by the troops which had been sent from Great Britain, and which were accompanied by Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Clinton. Finding himself thus strengthened, he prepared for active operations; but wishing to temper justice with mercy, on the 12th of June he issued a proclamation, offering pardon to all who would lay down their arms, with the exception of Samuel Adams and John Hancock, 'whose offences,' he declared, 'were of too flagitious a nature to admit of any other consideration than that of condign punishment.' This proclamation produced no effect on the Americans, save that of rousing them to more vigorous exertions. On Charlestown Neck, a peninsula situated to the north of Boston, with which it now communicates by a bridge, is a considerable eminence, called Bunker's Hill. As this was deemed a post of great importance, the Americans resolved to occupy it, and orders were given by the pro-

---

What measures did the Colonies take after the battle at Lexington?

How did they obtain military stores?

State some particulars.

In what state was Boston held?

At what time did these transactions take place?

What generals, &c. arrived in Boston?

On the 12th June what proclamation did Gen. Gage issue?

What were its conditions? How was it received?

What did the Americans resolve to do?

vincial authorities that a detachment of 1000 men should entrench themselves on the height in question. The party was accordingly moved forwards from Cambridge on the night of the 16th of June, but, by mistake, commenced their operations on Breed's Hill, an eminence nearer to the town of Boston than the place of their destination. Here they labored with such activity, and at the same time with such silence, that the appearance of their works, at day-break the next morning, was the first indication of their presence. The firing of guns from the Lively, man-of-war, whence they were first seen, gave the alarm to the British, whose commanders, on reconnoitering the position of the enemy from the steeples and heights of the city, perceived that they had thrown up a redoubt about eight rods square, from which lines extended to the eastward nearly to the bottom of the hill. To the westward the works were less perfect; but the provincials were busily employed in carrying them on, notwithstanding they were exposed to showers of shot and shells, discharged from the vessels in the harbor. The necessity of driving the enemy from their position was evident; and for this purpose Gage put 3000 men under the command of General Howe. On this occasion the British were not very alert in their preparations, as it was noon before their troops were embarked in the boats which were to convey them to Moreton's Point, at the southern extremity of Charlestown Neck. At this awful crisis every elevated spot in the town of Boston was covered with spectators, who anxiously awaited the event of the expected contest. Their attention was first arrested

---

How many did this party consist of?

Where did they go by mistake?

By morning, what was done? What annoyed them?

Who attempted to dislodge the Americans? With what force?

How were the inhabitants in Boston occupied?

by a dense smoke, which announced that the British, fearing lest the houses of Charlestown might afford shelter to the provincials, had set that place on fire. Proceeding to Moreton's Point, the king's troops formed in two lines, and marched slowly up the hill, whilst their artillery played on the American works. The provincials stood firm and steady; they reserved their fire till the British had advanced to within sixty or seventy yards of their lines; they then made a simultaneous discharge with so cool an aim, and supported their fire with so much steadiness, that the British gave way, and fled to the water's edge. Here they were rallied by their officers, and a second time led to the charge. A second time they retreated, and all seemed to be lost, when General Howe, aided by General Clinton, who, seeing his distress, had crossed over from Boston to join him, with difficulty persuaded them to make another onset, which was successful. The Americans had expended their ammunition, and were unable to procure a fresh supply. Their redoubt being forced, they were compelled to retreat; but though the road over Charlestown Neck, by which they retired, was enfiladed by the Glasgow, man-of-war, they withdrew with much less loss than might have been expected; they left dead on the field 139 of their comrades, and their wounded and missing amounted to 314. Amongst the valuable lives which were sacrificed in this battle, the Americans were sensibly affected by the loss of Dr. Warren, who was slain whilst standing on the redoubt, animating his fellow-soldiers to the most valorous exertions. Warren was a man of eminent talents, and of most amiable manners in private and domestic life. He

---

What was doing at Charlestown?

Describe the "Battle of Bunker's (properly Breed's) Hill"?

What was the American loss? What the British?

What distinguished American was among the slain?

excelled as an orator, and he was wise and prudent in council, and the circumstances of his death evinced that he could act as well as speak, and that the mildness of his character was united with firm determination and undaunted courage. The British purchased their victory dearly, their loss amounting to 226 killed and 828 wounded, including 79 officers; at this cost General Gage obtained little more than the field of battle. At the conclusion of the engagement he advanced to Bunker's Hill, which he fortified; whilst the Americans entrenched themselves on Prospect Hill, distant about a mile and a half from his lines.

---

#### SECTION XIV.

UNION OF THE THIRTEEN PROVINCES.—HANCOCK APPOINTED PRESIDENT, AND WASHINGTON COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF.

When Colonel Allen appeared at the gates of Ticonderoga, on the 10th of May, he summoned that fortress 'in the name of the Great Jehovah and the continental Congress.' On the very day on which this summons was given, that body assembled, and had the satisfaction to find itself joined by delegates from Georgia, so that the union of the thirteen provinces was now completed. Peyton Randolph, Esq., was appointed president; but urgent business soon after requiring his presence at home, he was succeeded by Mr. Hancock. After mature deliberation, the Congress agreed

---

When did this battle take place?

After the battle what did the British do?

Where did the Americans entrench themselves?

What can you relate of Colonel Allen?

On the 10th of May, what body assembled, and where?

Who was chosen president      Who succeeded him?

on addresses to the British nation, to the Canadians, to Ireland and the island of Jamaica, in which they insisted upon the topics upon which they had antecedently dwelt in similar compositions. Fearful also lest, in case of the continuance of hostilities with the mother country, their frontier should be devastated by the Indians, a *talk* was prepared in which the controversy between Great Britain and her colonies was *explained* in a familiar Indian style. They were told that 'they had no concern in the family quarrel, and were urged by the ties of ancient friendship and a common birth-place, to remain at home, to keep their hatchet buried deep, and to join neither side.' Such is the statement of Mr. Ramsay; and so far as Congress is concerned, no doubt that respectable historian is correct. But had he carefully examined the official correspondence of General Washington, he would have found, from a letter of his dated August 4, 1775, that the American commander-in-chief did not limit his views to neutrality on the part of the Indians, but that he took measures to secure the co-operation of the Caghnewaga tribe, in the event of any expedition being meditated against Canada. Still aiming, with however faint hopes, at conciliation, the Congress drew up another humble and pathetic petition to the King, which was delivered on the ensuing September by their agents to Lord Dartmouth, the colonial secretary of state, who informed them, that no answer would be returned to it. They did not however, confine themselves to literary controversy, but took measures for depriving the British troops of supplies. They also resolved to raise an army sufficient to enable them to cope with the enemy, and issued, for its equipment and pay, bills of credit to the value of two millions of

---

To what did the "Continental Congress" agree?

What was prepared for the Indians? What was the object of this *talk*?

How was the American Army to be paid?

dollars. With a happy unanimity they appointed George Washington commander-in-chief of their forces.\* Soon after he received his commission, the general repaired to the head-quarters at Cambridge, in the vicinity of Boston, where he arrived on the 3d of July, and was received with joyful acclamations by the troops. The army consisted of 14,500 men, and occupied cantonments so disposed as closely to beleaguer the enemy within Boston. The soldiers were hardy, active, and zealous. But still, when the gen-

\* "Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam, were then chosen major-generals, and Horatio Gates adjutant-general. Lee had lately held the office of colonel, and Gates that of major, in the British army. A solemn and dignified declaration, setting forth the causes and necessity of taking up arms, was prepared to be published to the army in orders, and to the people from the pulpit. After particularizing the aggressions of Great Britain, with the energy of men feeling unmerited injury, they exclaim:

"But why should we enumerate our injuries in detail? By one statute it is declared that parliament can of right make laws to bind us in all cases whatsoever. What is to defend us against so enormous, so unlimited a power? Not a single man of those who assume it, was chosen by us, or is subject to our control or influence; but, on the contrary, they are all of them exempt from the operation of such laws, and an American revenue, if not diverted from the ostensible purpose for which it is raised, would actually lighten their own burdens, in proportion as it increases ours. We saw the misery to which such despotism would reduce us. We, for ten years, incessantly and ineffectually besieged the throne as supplicants; we reasoned, we remonstrated with parliament in the most mild and decent language. "We are now reduced to the alternative of choosing an unconditional submission to the will of irritated ministers, or resistance by force. The latter is our choice. We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery. Honor, justice, and humanity forbid us tamely to surrender that freedom which we received from our gallant ancestors, and which our innocent posterity have a right to receive from us. We cannot endure the infamy and guilt of resigning succeeding generations to that wretchedness which inevitably awaits them if we basely entail hereditary bondage upon them. "Our cause is just; our union is perfect. Our internal resources are great; and, if necessary, foreign assistance

---

Who was chosen commander-in-chief?

Of what number did the army consist when he arrived at Cambridge?

Describe the army and relate the difficulties.

eral had minutely inspected the state of affairs, he found ample matter for serious reflection. He was destitute of a responsible commissariat to procure and dispense the necessary supplies. Many of the soldiers were ill-provided with arms. On the 4th of August, he was apprised of the alarming fact that his whole stock of powder would afford little more than nine rounds a man. On the settling of the rank of officers, also, he had to encounter the ill-humor of the ambitious, who conceived that they were not promoted according to their merits. With his characteristic patience and assiduity, however, he overcame these difficulties. By the influence of the respect which his character inspired, he reduced these jarring elements to some degree of order. His encampments were regularly supplied with provisions. By extraordinary exertions he procured a sufficient stock of ammunition and military stores; and though the well-dressed scouting parties of the British who approached his lines could not repress a smile on seeing his soldiers equipped in hunting-shirts, the affair at Breed's Hill had taught them that a handsome uniform is by no means essential to bravery in battle.

On the 10th of October, General Gage resigned the com-

is undoubtedly attainable. We greatly acknowledge, as a signal instance of the divine favor towards us, that his providence would not permit us to be called into this severe controversy, until we were grown up to our present strength, had been previously exercised in war-like operations, and possessed the means of defending ourselves. "With hearts fortified by these animating reflections, we most solemnly, before God and the world, **DECLARE**, that exerting the utmost energy of those powers, which our beneficent Creator hath graciously bestowed, the arms we have been compelled by our enemies to assume, we will, in defiance of every hazard, with unabating firmness and perseverance, employ for the preservation of our liberties, being, with one mind, resolved to die freeman rather than to live slaves."

---

What was General Washington apprised of on the 4th August?

What new aspect did the army assume?

How did the British soldiers view the American Army?

mand of the British army to General Howe, and sailed for England in a vessel of war. Had he made the voyage in a transport, he would have run some risk of being taken prisoner; for towards the close of this year, (1775,) Congress fitted out several privateers, which were eminently successful in capturing the store-ships which had been sent from Great Britain with supplies for the royal army.—These captures at once crippled the enemy and furnished the Americans with important requisites for carrying on the war.

---

## SECTION XV.

### INVASION OF CANADA.—DEATH OF MONTGOMERY.

Nor were the offensive operations of the provincials confined to the sea. Having, as has been before related, obtained possession of Ticonderoga, which is the key of Canada, the Congress determined to invade that province, in the hope that its inhabitants would welcome the forces which they might send against it, as their deliverers from the yoke of oppression. They accordingly gave the command of 1000 men to Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, with directions to march into Canada. When the expedition had advanced to the town of St. John's, Schuyler, in consequence of the bad state of his health, resigned the command to his associate, and returned home. In attacking St. John's, the commander of which made a brave defence, Montgomery experienced considerable difficulties in consequence of his want of the chief requisites for conducting a siege; but

---

On the 10th of October what occurred?	What had congress done?
Where, and what is Ticonderoga?	
What did Congress determine to do?	
To whom did Congress give the command of this army?	
What was its number?	

he vanquished them all, and compelled the garrison, consisting of 500 regulars and 100 Canadians, to surrender. During the progress of the seige, Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of Canada, had collected 800 men at Montreal, for the purpose of attacking the besieging army; but he was driven back by a body of the Vermont militia, commanded by General Warner. Montgomery, therefore, proceeded to Montreal, the garrison of which attempted to escape down the river, but were intercepted and captured by the American Colonel Easton: and Governor Carleton himself was so hard pressed, that he was glad to escape to Trois Rivieres, whence he proceeded to Quebec. To this place he was pursued by Montgomery, who in the course of his march, adopted the wisest measures to gain over the inhabitants of the province. With the peasants he succeeded; but upon priests and the seigneurs, or feudal lords, who foresaw that a revolution would be detrimental to their interests, he made little impression.

Whilst Montgomery was penetrating into Canada by the St. Lawrence, General Arnold, who afterwards rendered himself infamous by his treachery, was advancing to co-operate with him by the way of the Kennebeck river and the Chaudiere. This route appears upon the map to be a very direct one; but it was beset with formidable difficulties. In their voyage up the Kennebeck, Arnold and his comrades had to pull against a powerful stream interrupted by rapids, over which they were obliged to haul their boats with excessive labor. The space which intervenes between the mouth of the Kennebeck and that of the Chaudiere was a wild and pathless forest, through a great part of which they were compelled to cut their way with hatchets;

---

Describe the expedition, &c., and the attack on St. John's, and Montreal &c.

What did Sir Guy Carleton do? By whom was he defeated?

How did Montgomery succeed at Montreal? Describe this expedition.

During this, what other expedition was going on?

and so scantily were they furnished with provisions, that when they had eaten their last morsel they had thirty miles to travel before they could expect any farther supplies. In spite of these obstructions, Arnold persevered in his bold enterprise; and on the 8th of November he arrived at Point Levi, opposite Quebec; and had he possessed the means of immediately passing the St. Lawrence, such was the panic occasioned by his unexpected appearance, that it is probable that the city, in the absence of the Governor, would have surrendered to him. But whilst he was collecting craft to effect his passage, the inhabitants recovered from their consternation, the Governor arrived, and the place was put in a posture of defence. On the 1st of December, Montgomery, having effected a junction with Arnold, broke ground before Quebec. But he labored under insuperable disadvantages. His forces were inferior in number to those of the garrison. He was destitute of a proper battering train. His soldiers were daily sinking under the hardships of a Canadian winter; and their term of enlistment was soon to expire. Seeing that no hopes were left, but that of the success of a desperate effort, he attempted to carry the city by assault, and had penetrated to the second barrier, when he fell by a musket shot, leaving behind him the character of a brave soldier, an accomplished gentleman, and an ardent friend of liberty.—Arnold was carried wounded from the field; but on the death of his friend he took the command of the remnant of his forces, which he encamped at the short distance of three miles from the city.

---

What effect had the arrival of Arnold, on the 8th of Nov., on the inhabitants of Quebec?

On the 1st of December what took place?

What was the situation of Montgomery's army? How did he attempt to carry the city? With what success did he meet?

## SECTION XVI.

## EVACUATION OF BOSTON, MARCH 17, 1776.

Whilst these transactions were carrying on to the northward of the American continent, the inhabitants of the middle and southern provinces were employed in preparing for resistance against the demands of the British government, and in general compelled such of their governors as took any active measures for the support of royal authority, to consult for their safety by taking refuge on board of ships of war. In Virginia, the imprudence of Lord Dunmore provoked open hostilities, in the course of which he burned the town of Norfolk. By this act, however, and by a proclamation, in which he promised freedom to such of the negroes as should join his standard, he only irritated the provincials, without doing them any essential injury; and being finally driven from the colony, he returned to England.

Towards the close of this year, the commander-in-chief of the American forces found himself in circumstances of extreme embarrassment. 'It gives me great distress,' thus he wrote in a letter to Congress of the date of Sept. 21, 1775, 'to be obliged to solicit the attention of the honorable Congress to the state of this army, in terms which imply the slightest apprehension of being neglected. But my situation is inexpressibly distressing, to see the winter fast approaching upon a naked army; the time of their service within a few weeks of expiring; and no provision yet made

---

What of the middle and southern provinces?

What imprudence was Lord Dunmore guilty of? What did he promise to the negroes?

What was the situation of the commander-in-chief towards the close of 1775? To whom did he write on the 21st September, 1775?

for such important events. Added to these, the military chest is totally exhausted: the paymaster has not a single dollar in hand; the commissary-general assures me he has strained his credit, for the subsistence of the army, to the utmost. The quarter-master-general is precisely in the same situation; and the greater part of the troops are in a state not far from mutiny upon the deduction from their stated allowance.<sup>7</sup> The fact is, that the troops had engaged in the service of their country with feelings of ardent zeal; but, with a mistaken idea that the contest would be decided by a single effort, they had limited the time of their service to a short period, which was ready to expire. Congress had appointed a committee, consisting of Dr. Franklin and two other individuals, to organize an army for the year 1776. But when these gentlemen repaired to headquarters, and sounded the dispositions of the troops as to a second enlistment, they did not find in them the alacrity which they expected. The soldiers were, as they had evinced in all services of danger, personally brave; but they were unaccustomed to the alternate monotony and violent exertion of a military life, and their independent spirit could ill brook the necessary restraints of discipline. From these causes so many quitted the camp when the term of their service was expired, that on the last day of the year Washington's muster-roll contained the names of only 9650 men. By the exertions of the committee, however, these were speedily reinforced by a body of militia, who increased their numbers to 17,000. Upon these circumstances, the commander-in-chief, in one of his despatches to Congress, made the following striking remarks.

---

What did Gen. Washington say was the situation of the army?

What committee was appointed in 1776?

For what object was this committee appointed?

Describe the army, &c. To what number was it increased?

‘It is not in the pages of history, perhaps, to furnish a case like ours—to maintain a post within musket-shot of the enemy for six months together without ammunition, and, at the same time, to disband one army and recruit another, within that distance of twenty odd British regiments, is more, probably, than ever was attempted. But if we succeed as well in the last, as we have heretofore in the first, I shall think it the most fortunate event of my whole life.’ It may be permitted us to conjecture that in these circumstances the uneasiness of Washington was enhanced by his consciousness of the risk which he ran in thus communicating the secret of his difficulties to so numerous a body as the Congress. Had there been found one coward, one traitor, or even one indiscreet individual in that assembly, the British general would have been apprised of the vast advantages which he had over his antagonist; he would have adopted the offensive, and the cause of American independence would have been lost. But every colonial senator was faithful to his trust. Every one was silent as to the real situation of the army; and the commander-in-chief still confidently presented a bold front to the enemy. It was well known that the British troops in Boston were much straitened for provisions; and the militia having joined the army in expectation of immediate battle, were eager for the onset, and murmured at the delay of the general in giving the signal for an assault on the town. They were little aware of the distress by which he was embarrassed. Notwithstanding the Congress had even sent to the coast of Africa to purchase gunpowder, his magazines still contained but a scanty stock of that essential article, and many of his troops were destitute of

---

What then did Washington write to congress?

By what might the American independence have been lost?

muskets. But he kept to himself the important secret of the deficiency of his stores, and patiently submitted to the criticisms which were passed on his procrastination, till he had made the requisite preparations. He then proposed to storm the British lines; but was advised by his council of war, in preference to this measure, to take possession of Dorchester heights,\* an eminence which from the southward commands the harbor and city of Boston. To this advice he acceded, and having diverted the attention of the British garrison by a bombardment, which was merely a feint, on the night of the 4th of March he pushed forward a working party of 1200 men, under the protection of a detachment of 800 troops. The Americans were very expert in the use of the spade and pickaxe, and by day-break they had completed respectable lines of defence. The British admiral no sooner beheld these preparations, than he sent word to General Howe, that if the Americans were not dislodged from their works he could not with safety continue in the harbor. On the 6th Howe had completed his arrangements for the attack of the enemy's lines, and a bloody battle was expected; but the transports in which his troops were embarked for the purpose of approaching the heights by water were dispersed by a storm; and the enemy so industriously took advantage of the consequent suspension of his operations to strengthen their position, that when the storm subsided he despaired of success in attacking it. Finding the town no longer tenable, he eva-

\* Now added to Boston and called South Boston.

---

What did the commander-in-chief still do?

How did the he behave himself?      What did he propose?

What did he finally do?

On the 6th of March what was expected? What prevented it?

When was Boston evacuated?

uated it on the 17th of March, and sailed with his garrison, which amounted to 7000 men, to Halifax in Nova Scotia.

In consequence of an implied threat on the part of General Howe, that if he was interrupted by any hostile attack during the embarkation of his troops, he would set fire to the town, the British were allowed to retire without molestation, though their commander, immediately before his departure, levied considerable requisitions for the use of his army upon the merchants, who were possessed of woolen and linen goods; and though the soldiery, availing themselves of the relaxation of military discipline which usually accompanies the precipitate movements of troops, indulged themselves in defiance of orders issued to the contrary, in all the license of plunder. Previously to the evacuation of the place, Howe spiked all the cannon and mortars which he was obliged to leave behind him, and demolished the fortifications of Castle William. Immediately on the withdrawing of the royal forces, Washington, entering Boston in triumph, was hailed as a deliverer by the acclamations of the inhabitants. He also received the thanks of the congress and of the legislature of Massachusetts; and a medal was struck in honor of his services in expelling the invaders from his native land.

The exultation which the Americans felt at the expulsion of the British from Boston was tempered by the arrival of sinister intelligence from Canada. In sending an expedition into that country, Congress had been influenced

---

Where did Gen. Howe sail for? How many men had he?

In what *manner* was he allowed to leave Boston? Why?

What did he do previously to leaving Boston?

What did Gen. Washington do after the British withdrew?

How was he received?

What did he receive from congress and the legislature of Massachusetts?

What intelligence was received from Canada?

by two motives: they wished at once to secure the junction of the inhabitants of that province to their union, and to protect their own northern frontier from invasion. But the Canadians were little prepared for the assertion of the principle of freedom; and the rapacity of the unprincipled Arnold, and the misconduct of his troops, had alienated their affections from the common cause. Congress, however, by extraordinary exertions, sent to the camp before Quebec reinforcements, which, by the 1st of May, increased Arnold's army to the number of 3000 men. But his forces were unfortunately weakened by the ravages of the small-pox; and reinforcements from England having begun to arrive at Quebec, he determined upon a retreat. In this retrograde movement the American army had to encounter difficulties which to ordinary minds would have seemed insurmountable. On their march through almost impracticable roads, they were closely followed, and frequently brought to action, by an enemy superior in number. In an ill-advised attack on Trois Rivieres they sustained considerable loss, and their forces were for a time separated, and almost dispersed. But, notwithstanding these disasters, General Sullivan, who conducted the retreat, contrived to save his baggage, stores, and sick, and led back a respectable remnant of his army to Crown Point, where he resolved to make a stand. Being well aware of the necessity of guarding this quarter of their frontier against the incursions of the British, the Congress sent thither an army of 12,000 men, under the command of General Gates, who cast up strong works at Ticonderoga, and endeavored to retain the command of Lake Champlain by means of a flo-

---

What object had congress in sending an army into Canada?

What was Arnold's conduct?

Describe the conclusion of the expedition to Quebec, and its return.

What did Gen. Sullivan do?

What can you say of Gen. Gates and Gen. Carleton?

tilla, which was built and equipped with a rapidity hitherto unheard of. General Carleton, however, was not behind-hand with him in activity. He speedily fitted out a superior armament, by means of which he took or destroyed almost the whole of the American vessels. Having thus made himself master of the lake, he advanced to the vicinity of Ticonderoga; but finding that port too strongly fortified, and too well garrisoned to be taken by assault, he returned to Quebec. Valor and military skill were not the highest characteristics of Sir Guy Carleton. The kindness which he manifested to his prisoners, and especially to the sick and wounded of the Americans who fell into his hands, entitle him to the superior praise of humanity.

---

## SECTION XVII.

### DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, 4TH OF JULY, 1776.

When the British ministry took the resolution to coerce the discontented colonies by force of arms, they were little aware of the difficulty of their undertaking; and, consequently, the means which they adopted for the execution of their designs were by no means commensurate with the object which they had in view. But when they met the parliament in October, 1775, they were obliged to confess that the spirit of resistance to royal authority was widely diffused throughout the North America provinces, that rebellion had assumed a bold front, and had been alarmingly successful. To supply them with the means of suppressing it, parliament readily voted the raising and equipment of 28,000 seamen, and 55,000 land forces. The bill which

---

What did Gen. Carleton do?

In 1775, what were the British ministry obliged to confess?

What did parliament vote?

provided for this powerful armament also authorized his majesty to appoint commissioners, who were to be empowered to grant pardons to individuals, to inquire into and redress grievances, and to receive any colonies, upon their return to obedience, into the king's peace.

When the colonists were apprised of the bill having been passed into a law, they treated the offer of pardon with contempt, and contemplated with anger, but not with dismay, the formidable preparations announced by its provisions. Their irritation was excited to the highest pitch when they were informed that Lord North had engaged 16,000 German mercenaries to assist in their subjugation. Nor did this measure escape severe animadversion in the British Parliament. It was warmly censured by many members of the opposition, especially by Mr. Adair and Mr. Dunning, who maintained that, in engaging the services of foreign mercenaries without the previous consent of parliament, ministers had violated the provision of the Bill of Rights, and that by this infringement of the Constitution they had set a precedent which might be made available by some future arbitrary monarch to the destruction of the liberties of the country.

The command of the British forces was given to General Howe, who, in arranging the plan of the campaign, determined, first, after driving the enemy from Canada, to invade their country by the north-western frontier. 2dly, to subdue the southern colonies; and, 3dly, to strike at the center of the Union by conquering the province of New York, from which, by means of the Hudson river, he should be able to co-operate with the royal army in Can-

---

How did the colonists treat the offer?

What excited their irritation to the highest pitch?

To whom was the command of the British forces given?

What was the plan of the campaign?

ada. The latter province having been already rescued from the invaders by Sir Guy Carleton, General Howe committed the execution of the second part of his plan to General Clinton and Sir Peter Parker, who having effected a junction at Cape Fear, resolved to make an attack upon Charleston. They accordingly sailed up Ashley river, on which that place is situated; but they encountered so determined an opposition from a fort hastily erected on Sullivan's Island, and commanded by Colonel Moultrie, that, after sustaining considerable loss of men, and much damage to their shipping, they gave up their enterprise and sailed to New York. The result of this attempt was highly favorable to the Americans, as it consoled them for their losses in the north, inspired them with new confidence, and, for the ensuing two years and a half, preserved the southern colonies from the presence of a hostile force.

The command of the principal British fleet, destined to co-operate with General Howe, had been bestowed upon his brother Sir William, who, when his equipment was finished, sailed directly for Halifax. On his arrival at that place, he found that the general, impatient of his delay, had proceeded on his voyage towards New York, whither he immediately followed him, and joined him at Staten Island. On this junction of the two brothers, their forces were found to amount to 30,000 men; and never, perhaps, was an army better equipped, or more amply provided with artillery, stores, and every requisite for the carrying on of vigorous and active hostilities. Far different was the

---

Who had charge of the second part of the arrangement?

What place did they resolve to attack?

What reception did they meet with at Sullivan's Island?

What was the result of this attempt?

Who was the commander of the British fleet?

What junction was effected at Staten Island?

To what did their forces amount?      What was their condition?

condition of the American commander-in-chief. His troops, enlisted for short periods, had acquired little discipline. They were scantily clothed and imperfectly armed. They were frequently in want of ammunition; and they were ill-supplied with provisions. Disaffection to the cause of their country was also manifested by some of the inhabitants of New York, who, at the instigation of Governor Tryon, had entered into a conspiracy to aid the king's troops on their expected arrival. In this plot, even some of the army had been engaged; and a soldier of the commander-in-chief's own guard had, by the unanimous sentence of a court martial, been sentenced to die for enrolling himself among the conspirators, and enlisting others in the same traitorous cause. In these circumstances Washington could not but regard the approaching contest with serious uneasiness; but he, as usual, concealed his uneasiness within his own bosom, and determined to fight to the last in the cause of his country. His firmness was participated by the congress, who, whilst the storm seemed to be gathering thick over their heads, beheld it with eyes undismayed, and now proceeded with a daring hand to strike the decisive stroke which forever separated thirteen flourishing colonies from their dependence on the British crown. It is possible, nay, it is probable, that from the beginning of the disputes with the mother country, there may have been some few speculators among the American politicians, who entertained some vague notions and some uncertain hopes of independence. In every age, and in every country, there are individuals whose mental view extends to a wider circle than that of the community at large, and unhappy is

---

Describe the American army.

What was Washington's conduct?

How did congress view these appearances?

What did they now proceed to do?

their destiny if they attempt to bring their notions into action, or even to promulgate them before the season is ripe unto the harvest. But no such precipitancy was found amongst the partisans of American liberty. Like Franklin, for year after year, they limited their wishes to an exemption from parliamentary taxation, and to a preservation of their chartered rights and privileges. But the violent measures of the British ministers altered their sentiments, and the spectacle of their countrymen mustering in arms to resist ministerial oppression, prompted them to bolder daring. Finding that the British cabinet had hired foreign troops to assist in their subjugation, they foresaw that they might be reduced to apply to foreign aid to help them in their resistance against oppression. But what power would lend them aid whilst they retained the character of subjects of his Britannic majesty. Sentiments such as these, having been industriously and successfully disseminated throughout the union, the congress on the 4th of July, 1776, whilst the formidable array of the British fleet was hovering on their coasts, on the motion of Mr. Richard Henry Lee, representative of Virginia, passed their celebrated declaration of independence, by which act they forever withdrew their allegiance from the king of Great Britain. This important document is couched in the following terms:—

‘ When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature’s God entitle them,

---

What were the wishes of Franklin and others limited to, year after year?

Why were they induced to change their views?

What was made on the 4th of July, 1776?

In what terms is this document expressed?

a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

‘We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights, that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its power in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right,—it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former system of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain, is a history of repeated injuries and usurpation, all having in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

---

What truths are self-evident?      What will prudence dictate?  
To prove this what is submitted?

‘He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

‘He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attended to them.

‘He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature,—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

‘He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

‘He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of his people.

‘He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the mean time exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

‘He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States, for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

‘He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

---

What had the king refused his assent to?      What had he forbidden?

What had he refused to pass?      He had called together what?

He had dissolved what?      What had he refused?

What had he endeavored?      What had he obstructed?

‘He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

‘He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

‘He has kept among us, in time of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

‘He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

‘He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation;

‘For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

‘For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

‘For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

‘For imposing taxes upon us without our consent;

‘For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury;

‘For transporting us beyond the seas to be tried for pretended offences;

‘For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;

---

What had he made?      What had he erected?

What had he kept among us?      What had he affected?

What had he combined with others to do?      For quartering what?      For protecting what?      For cutting off what?      For imposing what?      For depriving of what?      For transporting what?      For abolishing what?

‘For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the form of our governments;

‘For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

‘He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

‘He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

‘He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

‘He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

‘He has excited domestic insurrections among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages; whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

‘In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

---

For taking away what? For suspending what?

He had abdicated what? He had plundered what?

He was transporting what? He had constrained what? [sions?

He had excited what? What had been done in every stage of these oppres-

‘Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connexions and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind,—enemies in war, in peace, friends.

‘We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE and INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown; and that all political connexion between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we

---

Of what had the British been warned?

Of what had they been reminded?

How had they been appealed to?

In what was it necessary to acquiesce?

Repeat the declaration, “We, therefore,” &c.

mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.\*

---

## SECTION XVIII.

### CAPTURE OF LONG ISLAND, 26TH OF AUGUST, 1776.

General Washington was well aware that New York would be the first object of attack on the part of the British; and despairing of being able to encounter them in the open field, he resolved to protract the approaching campaign by carrying on a war of posts. With this view, after fortifying Long Island, he threw up various entrenchments on New York Island, which is bounded on the west by the Hudson, and on the south and east by East river, whilst to the north it is separated from the main land by a narrow channel which unites these two streams. He also constructed two forts, the one on the Hudson named Fort Washington, by which he proposed to maintain his communication with Jersey, whilst the other, called Fort Lee, connected his defence with the province of New York.— Whilst he was making these preparations he received from

\* "This declaration was received by the people with transports of joy. Public rejoicings took place in various parts of the Union. In New York, the statue of George III. was taken down, and the lead, of which it was composed, was converted into musket balls. In Boston, the garrison was drawn up in King's street, which, from that moment, took the name of *State-street*, and thirteen salutes, by thirteen detachments, into which the troops were formed, were fired; the bells of the town were rung, in token of felicitation, and the evening concluded with the tearing in pieces, and burning the ensigns of royalty—lions, scepters, and crowns."

---

What was Gen. Washington well aware of?

What did he do, and with what view?

Where was Fort Washington, and where Fort Lee?

Pennsylvania a seasonable reinforcement of 10,000 men, raised for the express purpose of forming a flying camp; but he was disappointed in his expectation of the aid of a large body of militia. Independently of the flying camp, his forces, at this moment of peril, amounted only to 17,225 men.

Before commencing hostilities, the Howes, with a view of conciliation, or of detaching the wavering amongst the colonists from the cause of the congress, issued a proclamation, offering pardon to such of his majesty's rebellious subjects as would lay down their arms, and announcing their powers, on the fulfilment of certain conditions, to receive any colony, district, or place, into the king's peace. This proclamation produced no effect beyond the districts from time to time occupied by the royal army. General Howe also endeavored to open a correspondence with Washington, for the purpose of laying a ground for the amicable adjustment of all differences between the colonies and the mother country; but as the British commander did not recognize the official character of Washington in the address of his letter, it was returned unopened, and thus this attempt at negotiation failed.

Those who are accustomed to the rapid proceedings of more modern warfare, cannot give to General Howe the praise due to activity. Though he arrived at Staten Island on the 10th of June, it was not till the 26th of August that

---

What reinforcement did Washington receive, and from whence?

To what number did his forces amount?

What was the British force did you just say? *Ans. 30,000.*

What did the Howes do before commencing hostilities?

What were its contents?

What effect did it produce?

What did Gen. Howe attempt to do with Washington?

How was it received? Why?

he commenced active operations against the enemy by an attack on Long Island, on the north-western part of which a respectable force of Americans, commanded by General Sullivan, occupied an entrenched camp. Their position was protected in front by a range of hills stretching across the island, from the Narrows, a strait which separates it from Staten Island, to the town of Jamaica, situated on the southern coast. Over the hills in question pass three defensible roads, each of which was guarded by 800 men.—The pass by the Narrows was attacked and carried by General Grant,—the second, by Flatbush, was cleared by General de Heister, in retreating before whom the Americans were encountered by General Clinton, who with the right wing of the British army, had made a detour by Jamaica. Thus the provincials were driven into their lines with the loss of upwards of 1000 men, whilst the British loss did not amount to more than 450. During the engagement Washington had sent strong reinforcements into Long Island, and, at its close, he repaired thither in person with the greater part of his army. This movement had nearly occasioned his ruin. He soon found himself cooped up in a corner, with a superior force in front prepared to attack his works, which were untenable. In these circumstances his only safety lay in retreat. It was a difficult operation to convey a whole army across a ferry in the presence of an enemy, whose working parties could be heard by his sentries. But favored by the darkness of the night, and by a fog which arose in the morning, he transported the

---

What attack was made, and when?

Who commanded the Americans on Long Island?

Describe the position of his camp.

Describe the engagement.

How did Washington extricate himself?

whole of his force to New York, leaving nothing behind him but some heavy cannon.

---

## SECTION XIX.

### EVACUATION OF NEW YORK, FIRST OF SEPTEMBER 1776.

Among the prisoners taken by the British on Long Island was General Sullivan, whom General Howe sent on his parole with a message to Congress, renewing his offers to negotiate for an amicable accommodation. The Congress sent a committee of three of their body,—Dr. Franklin, John Adams, and Edward Rutledge, to confer with him on the subject of his communication. These deputies were received with great politeness by General Howe; but, after a full discussion with the British commander, they reported to Congress that his proposals were unsatisfactory, and his powers insufficient. Their report concluded in the following terms:—‘It did not appear to your committee, that his lordship’s commission contained any other authority than that expressed by the act of parliament,—namely, that of granting pardons, with such exceptions as the commissioners shall think proper to make, and of declaring America or any part of it to be in the king’s peace on submission; for, as to the power of inquiring into the state of America, which his lordship mentioned to us, and of conferring and consulting with any persons the commissioners might think proper, and representing the result of such

---

Who among the American prisoners was taken on Long Island?

Where did Gen. Howe send him?

Who composed the committee sent by congress to Gen. Howe?

How were they received?

What did they report?

How did their report conclude?

conversation to the ministry, who, provided the colonies would subject themselves, might, after all, or might not, at their pleasure, make any alterations in the former instructions to governors, or propose in parliament any amendment of the acts complained of; we apprehend any expectation from the effect of such a power would have been too uncertain and precarious to be relied on by America, had she still continued in her state of dependence.<sup>7</sup> This attempt at negotiation having thus fruitlessly terminated, nothing was left but to decide the dispute by arms.

The Congress embraced this alternative in circumstances which would have reduced men of less resolute spirits to despair. Their army was so dispirited by the events which had taken place in Long Island, that the militia began to desert, and the constancy of some of the regulars was shaken. They were apprised, too, that Washington foresaw the necessity of making a series of retrograde movements, which were calculated to cloud the public mind with despondency. The prognostics of the General were soon verified. On the 15th of September, General Howe effected a landing on New York Island, and compelled him to evacuate the city of New York, and to retire to the north end of the island. Here Howe unaccountably suffered him to remain unmolested for nearly four weeks, at the end of which time he maneuvered to compel him to give him battle on the island. Dreading the being reduced to this perilous necessity, the American commander withdrew to the White Plains, taking, however, every opportunity to front the enemy, and engaging in partial actions, which in some degree kept the British in check. At length

---

What alternative did congress embrace?

What was the situation of the American army at this time?

What was effected on the 15th September?

Where did Washington withdraw after four weeks?

he crossed the Hudson, and occupied some strong ground on the Jersey shore of that river, in the neighborhood of Fort Lee. He had no sooner evacuated New York Island than General Howe attacked and took Fort Washington, in which he made 2700 men prisoners, at the cost, however, of 1200 men on his side killed and wounded. Fort Lee was shortly after evacuated by its garrison, and taken possession of by Lord Cornwallis. Following up these successes, General Howe pursued the flying Americans to Newark, and from Newark to Brunswick, and from Brunswick successively to Princeton and Trenton, till at length he drove them to the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware. Nothing could exceed the distress which the American army suffered during this retreat through the Jerseys.— They were destitute of blankets and shoes, and their clothing was reduced to rags. They were coldly looked upon by the inhabitants, who gave up the cause of America for lost, and hastened to make their peace with the victors.— Had General Howe been able to maintain discipline in his army, Jersey would have been severed from the Union.— But, fortunately for the interests of the congress, his troops indulged in all the excesses of military violence, and irritated the inhabitants of the country to such a degree, that their new-born loyalty was speedily extinct, and all their thoughts were bent upon revenge.

---

Where did he next go?

What fort was taken?

How many of the Americans were killed and taken prisoners?

What fort was evacuated?

Where did the British pursue the Americans?

Describe the condition of the American army?

How did the British treat the people of New Jersey?

What was the consequence?

## SECTION XX.

## BATTLE OF TRENTON, 28TH OF DECEMBER, 1776.

On the approach of the British to the Delaware, congress adjourned its sittings from Philadelphia to Baltimore, and it was expected that General Howe would speedily make his triumphal entry into the Pennsylvanian capital. But a bold maneuver of Washington suddenly turned the tide of success. On his arrival at the Delaware, his troops were dwindled down to the number of 3000; but having received some reinforcements of Pennsylvanian militia, he determined to endeavor to retrieve his fortunes by a decisive stroke. The British troops were cantoned in Burlington, Bordentown, and Trenton, waiting for the formation of the ice to cross into Pennsylvania. Understanding that in the confidence produced by a series of successes, they were by no means vigilant, he conceived the possibility of taking them by surprise. He accordingly, on the evening of Christmas day, conveyed the main body of his army over the Delaware, and falling upon the troops quartered in Trenton, killed and captured about 900 of them, and recrossed into Pennsylvania with his prisoners. On the 28th of December, he again took possession of Trenton, where he was soon encountered by a superior force of British, who drove in his advanced parties, and entered the town in the evening, with the intention of giving him battle the next morning. The two armies were separated only by a narrow creek, which runs through the town. In such a position it should seem to be impossible that any movement on

---

To what place did congress adjourn?

What was Washington's maneuver?

How many of his 17,000 troops had he left?

Where were the British troops encamped?

What was done at Trenton?

the one side or on the other could pass unobserved. But in the darkness of the night, Washington, leaving his fires lighted, and a few guards to attract the attention of the enemy, quitted his encampment, and, crossing a bridge over the creek, which had been left ungarded, directed his march to Princeton, where, after a short but brisk engagement, he killed 60 of the British, and took 300 prisoners. The rest of the royal forces were dispersed and fled in different directions. Great was the surprise of Lord Cornwallis, who commanded the British army at Trenton, when the report of the artillery at Princeton, which he at first mistook for thunder, and the arrival of breathless messengers, apprised him that the enemy was in his rear. Alarmed by the danger of his position, he commenced a retreat; and, being harassed by the militia and the countrymen who had suffered from the outrages perpetrated by his troops on their advance, he did not deem himself in safety till he arrived at Brunswick, from whence by means of the Raritan, he had a communication with New York.

This splendid success inspired the Americans with renewed spirits. Recruits were readily raised for their army, which took up its winter quarters at Morristown, about 30 miles to the northward of Brunswick; here both the officers and soldiers were inoculated for the small-pox. During this interval of comparative leisure, Washington urgently renewed the representations which he had before frequently made to the congress, of the necessity of abandoning the system of enlisting men for limited terms of ser-

---

Describe the transaction at Princeton.

What is said of Lord Cornwallis?

In his retreat what difficulties did he meet with?

What was the effect of this splendid success?

Where did the American army take up its winter quarters?

What did Washington urge on congress?

vice. The dread justly entertained by that body of a standing army had hitherto induced them to listen coldly to his remonstrances on this point. But the experience of the last campaign corrected their views, and they resolved to use their utmost exertion to raise an army pledged to serve till the conclusion of the war. The free spirit of the Americans, however, could not brook enlistment for a time so undefined, and the congress therefore issued proposals for a levy of soldiers to be engaged for three years, at the same time offering a bounty of 100 acres of land to those who would accept their first proposals. Though these measures in the end proved effectual, their accomplishment was slow, and in the spring of 1777, Washington's whole force did not amount to more than 1500 men; but with these inconsiderable numbers he so disposed his posts, that with the occasional assistance of the New Jersey militia and volunteers, he for some weeks kept the British in check at Brunswick. At this period, the difficulties under which he had so long labored from the want of arms and military stores, were alleviated by the arrival of upwards of 20,000 muskets, and 1000 barrels of powder, which had been procured in France and Holland by the agency of the celebrated dramatist, Carron de Beaumarchais.

Late in the spring of 1777, however, the utmost exertions of congress in forwarding the recruiting service could put no more than 7272 effective men at the disposal of General Washington. With this small force it was manifestly his policy to gain time, and by occupying advantageous ground, to avoid being forced to a general engagement. With a view, however, of inspiring his countrymen, he

---

What did they resolve to do? And what proposals were issued? \*

With what success did these measures meet?

How were Washington's difficulties alleviated?

What was the whole American force in 1777?

took the field before the enemy had quitted their winter quarters, and towards the end of May he made a movement from Morristown to Middlebrook, where he encamped in a strong position. General Howe no sooner heard that the Americans were in motion, than he advanced from Brunswick to Somerset Court House, apparently with an intention of pushing for the Delaware; but the country rising in arms on every side of him, he was deterred from prosecuting this design, and hastily measured back his steps to his former position. On their retreat, his troops committed great ravages, and particularly incensed the inhabitants by burning some of their places of worship. After frequently trying in vain to entice Washington from his strong position, General Howe at length retired to Amboy. There learning that his adversary had descended to Quibbletown, he hastened back to attack him; but had the mortification on his arrival at the spot lately occupied by the Americans, to learn that his vigilant foe had withdrawn into his fastnesses. Despairing of being able to penetrate into Pennsylvania by the way of the Jerseys, he passed over into Staten Island, from which point he resolved to prosecute the future views of his campaign by the assistance of his fleet. What those views might be, it was difficult for Washington to ascertain. The whole coast of the United States was open to the British commander-in-chief. He might at his pleasure sail to the north or to the south. General Washington was inclined to believe that his intention was to move up Hudson river to co-operate with General Burgoyne, who was advancing with a large army on the Canadian frontier, and, impressed with this idea, he

---

What movement did Washington make? Where did Gen. Howe advance

What maneuvers followed? [to?

Whither did Gen. Howe then go?

What was the condition of the whole coast of the United States?

moved a part of his army to Peekskill, whilst he posted another portion at Trenton, to be ready, if required, to march to the relief of Philadelphia. Whilst he was in this state of uncertainty, he received intelligence that Howe had embarked with 16,000 men, and had steered to the southward. Still apprehending that this might be a feint, he cast an anxious eye to the northward, till he was further informed that the British General, after looking into the Delaware, had proceeded to the Chesapeake. The plans of the invaders were then clearly developed. It was evident that they intended to march through the northern part of the State of Delaware, and take possession of Philadelphia. Much time was lost to the British by their voyage, in consequence of unfavorable winds. Though they set sail on the 23d of July, they did not arrive at Elk-ferry, the place fixed upon for their landing, till the 25th of August. General Howe had no sooner disembarked his troops than he advanced through the country by forced marches, to within two miles of the American army, which having proceeded rapidly from Jersey to the present scene of action, was stationed at Newport.

---

## SECTION XXI.

### CAPTURE OF PHILADELPHIA, 26TH OF SEPTEMBER, 1776.

On the approach of the enemy General Washington resolved to dispute their passage over the Brandywine Creek. In taking this step he appears to have acted con-

Why did Washington send part of his army to Peekskill?

In the mean time what did Gen. Howe do?

What was the plan of the invaders?

How near did Gen. Howe advance?

To what station did the American army march?

trary to his better judgment. By throwing himself upon the high ground to his right, he might have brought on a war of posts, much better adapted to the capacities of his undisciplined forces, than a battle fought on equal terms. But he dreaded the impression which would be made upon the public feeling, should he leave the road to Philadelphia open, and yielded to the general voice which called upon him to fight for the preservation of the seat of the American government. The action was fought at Chadd's ford, on the Brandywine, on the 11th of September. On this occasion Howe showed his generalship by the skilfulness of his combinations. While a part of his army, under the command of General Knyphausen, made a false attack at the ford, a strong column, headed by Lord Cornwallis, crossing the Brandywine at its fork, turned the left of the Americans, and Knyphausen forcing a passage at that moment of alarm and confusion, the Americans gave way, and retired to Chester, their retreat being covered by Wooster's brigade, which preserved its ranks unbroken. Their loss in killed and wounded amounted to 1200.— Among the latter was the Marquis de Lafayette, who, inspired with zeal for the cause of freedom, had, at the age of nineteen, quitted his country at considerable hazard, and entered into the American army, in which he at once obtained the rank of major-general. By the event of the battle of the Brandywine the country was in a great degree open to the British. Washington in vain made one or two attempts to impede their progress, and on the 26th

---

What was the number of the American army?      The British?

What induced Washington to fight at Chadd's ford?

Describe the battle.

What was the loss?

What can you say of the Marquis de Lafayette?

At this time what was the situation of the country?

of September, General Howe made his triumphant entry into Philadelphia. On his approach the congress, who had returned thither from Baltimore, once more took flight, and withdrew first to Lancaster and afterwards to Yorktown.

General Howe, on marching to the Pennsylvanian capital, had left a considerable number of troops at Germantown, a few miles from that place. As these were unsupported by the main body of his army, General Washington determined upon an attempt to cut them off. His plan was well laid, and the forces which he despatched on this expedition took the enemy by surprise, and at first drove all before them. But a check having been given them by a small party of the British who had thrown themselves into a stone house, they were soon opposed by the fugitives who had rallied in force, and obliged to retreat with loss.

When General Howe quitted New York for the purpose of gaining possession of Philadelphia, he was deterred from making his approaches by the Delaware, by the preparations made by the Americans to obstruct the navigation of that river. The principal of these consisted of a fort erected on Mud Island, which is situated in the middle of the river, about seven miles below the city. On a height on the Jersey side of the river, called Red Bank, they had erected a strong battery. The channels on both sides of Mud Island were closed by strong and heavy chevaux de frise, through which was left a single passage closed by a boom. As it was absolutely necessary to make himself master of these works, in order to open a communication with his fleet, General Howe, gave orders that they should

---

What took place on the 26th September?

To what places did congress withdraw?

Describe the occurrence at Germantown.

How was the navigation of the Delaware obstructed?

be forced. In his first attack he was unsuccessful. In storming the battery of Red Bank, Count Donop was mortally wounded, and his troops were repulsed with considerable loss. But the bulk of the chevaux de frise having, by diverting the current of the river, deepened the channel on the Pennsylvania side of Mud Island, a ship of war mounted with twenty-four pounders was warped through it into a position where she could enfilade the fort, which, being no longer tenable, the garrison retired from it to Red Bank. By these operations General Howe obtained full command of the Delaware, and by its means every facility for the conveyance of supplies to his army.

Mr. Hancock having on the 29th of October of this year resigned the presidency of congress, on the 1st of November ensuing, Mr. Henry Laurens was appointed to succeed him.

---

## SECTION XXII.

### BURGOYNE'S EXPEDITION.

When the news of General Howe's success arrived in England, the great majority of the nation were transported with joy. In the defeat of Washington, the capture of Philadelphia, and the expulsion of the congress, the members of which were represented as miserable fugitives, seeking in trembling anxiety for a temporary shelter from the vengeance of the law, they fondly saw an earnest of the termination of the war by the submission of the rebels. But their exultation was speedily damped by the annuncia-

---

Describe the removal of these obstructions.

Who succeeded Mr. Hancock as president of congress?

How were the English affected by the news of Gen. Howe's success?

How were the members of congress represented to them?

tion of the capture by these very rebels of a whole British army.

A cursory inspection of the map of the United States will suffice to shew, that for the purpose of their subjugation it was at this period of high importance to the British to form a communication with Canada by means of Hudson river. This would have intersected the insurgent provinces, and by cutting off their intercourse with each other, and by hemming in the eastern States, which the British ministry regarded as the soul of the rebellious confederacy, would have exposed them to be overrun and conquered in detail. General Howe, therefore, was directed by the ministry to operate with a part of his army northwards from New York, whilst General Burgoyne was instructed to enter the state of New York by its north-western frontier, and to make his way good to Albany, where it was intended that he should form a junction with the forces which Howe should send to co-operate with him. The expediency of this plan was so obvious that it did not escape the foresight of the Americans, who, in order to obviate it, had strongly fortified Ticonderoga, and the adjacent height of Mount Independence. They had also taken measures to obstruct the passage from Lake Champlain, and had moreover strengthened the defences of the Mohawk river. For garrisoning these posts, and for conducting the requisite operations in the field, they gave orders to raise an army of 13,600 men.

---

How was their exultation damped?

What communication was it of importance to form?

What directions from the ministry were given to Gen. Howe?

What to Gen. Burgoyne? To intercept these movements what had the Americans done?

For effecting these objects, what had they done?

The British army destined to act under Burgoyne consisted of 7000 regulars, furnished with every requisite for war, especially with a fine train of artillery. These were supported by a number of Canadians, and a considerable body of Indians. It was arranged in the plan of the campaign, that whilst Burgoyne, at the head of these forces should pour into the State of New York, from Lake Champlain, a detachment under the command of Col. St. Leger should march towards Lake Ontario, and penetrate in the direction of Albany, by the Mohawk river, which falls into the Hudson a little above that town.

General Burgoyne arrived at Quebec on the 6th of May, and immediately putting himself at the head of his army, he proceeded up Lake Champlain to Crown Point. Here he was joined by the Indians, to whom he made a speech, in which he inculcated upon them the virtue of mildness, and strictly forbade them to destroy any persons except in battle. An ancient Iroquois chieftain, in the name of his comrades, promised strict compliance with the general's injunctions. From Crown Point the royal army directed its march to Ticonderoga. Here General Burgoyne expected to encounter a powerful opposition, as he well knew that the Americans had flattered themselves that by the fortifications which they had erected on it, they had rendered it almost impregnable. But the forces which had been destined to its defence had not arrived. General St. Clair had not men enough to man his lines. He saw his position nearly surrounded by the enemy, who were erect-

---

Describe Gen. Burgoyne's army.

How was the campaign arranged?

From Quebec, where did Gen. Burgoyne proceed?

What did he here say to the Indians?

What did he expect to encounter?

What American General was at Ticonderoga? What was his situation?

ing a battery on a hill which commanded his entrenchments. In these circumstances, a council of war unanimously recommended to their commander the evacuation of Ticonderoga, which he effected with such good order and secrecy, that he was enabled to bring off a great part of the public stores. He left behind him, however, ninety-three pieces of ordnance, which fell into the hands of the British. The retreating Americans took the road to Skeensborough, which is situated at the southern extremity of Lake George. In their flight they were briskly pursued by General Fraser by land, whilst Burgoyne attacked and destroyed their flotilla on Lake George; and so closely were they pressed by this combined movement, that they were compelled to set fire to their stores and boats at Skeensborough, and take refuge in Fort Anne, a few miles to the southward of that place. Here, however, they did not long find shelter. Their rear guard was attacked and routed by Colonel Fraser, at Hubbardton; and Lieutenant-Colonel Hill having been sent forward from Skeensborough, by General Burgoyne, with the 9th regiment of foot, to make an assault on Fort Anne, the provincials, after a short, but brisk engagement, withdrew to Fort Edward, which is situated on the Hudson river. Here their scattered forces being collected, were found to amount to no more than 4400 men, who being unable to cope with their victorious pursuers, soon found themselves under the necessity of making another retrograde movement in the direction of Albany. This long series of successes filled the minds of the British with exultation. They had beaten the enemy

---

What did the council of war advise him to do?

Describe his retreat, and the pursuit.

What events transpired at Fort Anne?

To what did the forces of Gen. St. Clair amount?

What were the feelings of the British?

in every encounter; had forced them from their fastnesses, and entertained sanguine hopes of driving them before them till the co-operating force which they presumed General Howe was sending up the Hudson should intercept their retreat, and put them between two fires. Burgoyne issued proclamations in the style of a conqueror, summoning the inhabitants of the district in which he was operating to aid his pursuit of the fugitive rebels. The assistance which he called for was very necessary, not for pursuit, but defence—his difficulties were now commencing. Instead of falling back from Skeensborough to Ticonderoga, and advancing from the latter place by Lake George, (a movement which he declined, as having the appearance of a retreat,) he determined to march across the country from Skeensborough to Fort Edward; but the road was so broken up—it was so intersected with creeks and rivulets, the bridges over which had been broken down, and so much embarrassed with trees cut down on each side, and thrown across it with entangled branches, that it was with immense labor he could advance a mile a day. When he had at length penetrated to Fort Edward, which he reached on the 30th of July, he found it abandoned by the enemy, who by their retreat left free his communication with Lake George, from which he obtained supplies of stores and provisions conveyed by land from Fort George to Hudson river, and thence floated down to his camp.

---

What was the character of Burgoyne's proclamation?

But what were now commencing?

Where did Gen. Burgoyne determine to march?

With what difficulties did he meet?

From whence was his army supplied?

L

## SECTION XXIII.

## FAILURE OF BURGOYNE'S EXPEDITION.

The delay gave the Americans time to recover from the consternation into which they had been thrown by the loss of Ticonderoga, and the subsequent misfortunes of their army. Determined to make amends for their previous dilatoriness by instant activity, they flew to arms. The plundering of Jersey had taught them that peaceable conduct and submission afforded no protection against British rapine; and they were persuaded, that whatever might be the wishes of General Burgoyne, he had not power to restrain his Indian auxiliaries from practising their accustomed savage mode of warfare. Looking for safety, then, only to their swords, and judging from their knowledge of the country, that the farther the British commander advanced, the greater would be his difficulties, they hastened their reinforcements from every town and hamlet in the vicinity of the seat of war, and soon increased the army of St. Clair to the number of 13,000 men.

Whilst General Burgoyne was making his way to the Hudson, Lieutenant-Colonel St. Leger had arrived at the Mohawk river, and was laying siege to Fort Schuyler. Receiving intelligence that General Herkimer was hastening at the head of a body of troops to the relief of the place, he sent a detachment with instructions to lie in ambush on his line of march, and to cut him off. These instructions were so well obeyed, that Herkimer fell into the snare, his troops were dispersed, and he himself was killed. St. Leger now entertained sanguine hopes of

---

What motives produced such an increase of Gen. St. Clair's army?

What was now doing at Fort Schuyler?

What happened to Gen. Herkimer?

speedily taking the fort; but the Indians who composed a considerable part of his little army, taking alarm at the news of the approach of General Arnold, at the head of a detachment, whose numbers were purposely exaggerated by an American emissary in their camp, insisted on an immediate retreat. This mutiny compelled St. Leger to raise the seige, and to retire to Canada leaving behind him a great part of his artillery and stores.

When General Burgoyne was informed of the arrival of St. Leger before Fort Schuyler, he thought it very expedient to make a forward movement towards Albany, for the purpose of co-operating with that officer, and also with the British troops who were, as he expected, advancing up the Hudson. The principal objection to this step was, that it would necessarily remove him to a perilous distance from his supplies, which were collected at Fort Edward. With a view, therefore, of procuring a plentiful stock of provisions from a nearer point, he dispatched Lieutenant-Colonel Baum with 600 men, of whom 100 were Indians, with instructions to seize and convey to his camp a considerable magazine of flour and other supplies which the Americans had established at Bennington, in the district of Vermont. Baum, being erroneously informed that the inhabitants of that part of the country were favorably disposed towards the British, marched forwards without due precaution, till, on approaching Bennington, he found the enemy assembled in force in his front. In this exigency he took possession of an advantageous post, where he entrenched himself, and sent to Burgoyne for succour. Colonel Breyman was detached to reinforce him; but before the arrival of that offi-

---

How was a mutiny raised, and what was the effect?

What step did Gen. Burgoyne think of? What objection was there to it?

How did he endeavor to procure provisions?

By what error was Baum deceived?

Describe what followed at Bennington?

cer, the fate of his countryman was decided. Baum had been attacked by the American General Stark, had lost his field-pieces, and had witnessed the death or capture of most of his detachment. On his arrival at the scene of slaughter, Breyman was also vigorously assailed, and compelled to retreat with the loss of his artillery.\*

The failure of this expedition was most disastrous to the British commander-in-chief, who, being disappointed of receiving the expected supplies from Vermont, was obliged to await the arrival of provisions from Fort George, by which he was delayed from the 15th of August to the 13th of September. This interval of time was well improved by the Americans, who, flushed with their success against Baum and Breyman, pressed on the British with increased numbers and increased confidence. They were also cheer-

\* "General Stark pursued their flying forces until dark, and was obliged to draw off his men, to prevent them from firing at each other under cover of night. "With one hour more of daylight," as he writes in his official report, "he would have captured the whole body." The fruits of the victory were four pieces of brass cannon, several hundred stand of arms, eight brass drums, a quantity of German broadswords, and about seven hundred prisoners. Two hundred and seven were killed upon the spot; the number of the wounded was not ascertained. Colonel Baum was wounded and made a prisoner, and shortly after died of his wounds. The loss of the Americans was thirty killed and forty wounded."

"Several anecdotes of this affair have been recorded, and the following deserves a repetition. Among the reinforcements from Berkshire county came a clergyman, with a portion of his flock, resolved to make bare the arm of flesh against the enemies of the country. Before daylight on the morning of the 16th, he addressed the commander as follows. "We the people of Berkshire, have been frequently called upon to fight, but have never been led against the enemy. We have now resolved, if you will not let us fight, never to turn out again." General Stark asked him "if he wished to march then, when it was dark and rainy." "No," was the answer. "Then," continued Stark, "if the Lord should once more give us sunshine, and I do not give you fighting enough, I will never ask you to come again." The weather cleared up in the course of the day, and the men of Berkshire followed their spiritual guide into action."

---

What were the effects of this defeat on the British?

What on the Americans? Who arrived at this moment? For what object?

ed to vigorous exertion by the arrival at this critical moment of General Gates, who was commissioned by congress to take the command of the Northern army.

After most anxious deliberation, General Burgoyne, having by extraordinary exertions collected provisions for thirty days, crossed the Hudson river on the 13th of September, and advanced to within two miles of General Gates's camp, which was situated about three miles to the northward of Stillwater. Gates boldly advanced to meet him, and a hard fought battle ensued, which, though not decisive, was very detrimental to the British, as it shook the fidelity of their Indian allies and of the Canadians, who now began to desert in great numbers. The desertion of the Indians was accelerated by the following tragical incident. Miss M'Rea, an American lady, who resided in the vicinity of the British encampment, being engaged to marry Captain Jones, an officer of Burgoyne's army, her lover, being anxious for her safety, as he understood that her attachment to himself and the loyalty of her father had rendered her an object of persecution to her countrymen, engaged some Indians to escort her within the British lines, promising to reward the person who should bring her safe to him, with a barrel of rum. Two of these emissaries having found the destined bride, and communicated to her their commission, she without hesitation, consented to accompany them to the place of meeting appointed by Captain Jones. But her guides unhappily quarrelling on the way, as to which of them should present her to Mr. Jones and receive the promised recompence, one of them, to terminate the dispute, cleft her skull with his tomahawk, and laid her dead at his feet. This transaction struck the whole

---

Describe the battle near Stillwater.

By what incident was the desertion of the Indians hastened?

British army with horror. General Burgoyne, on hearing of it, indignantly demanded that the murderer should be given up to condign punishment. Prudential considerations, however, prevented his being put to death, as he well deserved. Burgoyne was of opinion, that his pardon upon terms would be more efficacious in preventing further barbarities than his execution: he, therefore, spared his life, upon condition that his countrymen would form that time forth, abstain from perpetrating any cruelties on the unarmed inhabitants, or on those whom they had vanquished in battle. As the Earl of Harrington at a subsequent period stated in his examination before the House of Commons, he told their interpreter 'that he would lose every Indian rather than connive at their enormities.' The savages at first seemed willing to comply with his renewed injunctions; but resentment rankled in their breasts at his interference with their habits of warfare, the respect with which they had once looked up to him was impaired by their knowledge of the difficulties of his situation, and they soon began to quit the camp, loaded with their accumulated plunder. Thus checked in his progress, and deserted by his allies, Burgoyne sent urgent letters to Sir Henry Clinton, who commanded at New York, entreating him to hasten forwards the co-operative forces on which he relied for safety and success, and apprising him that want of provisions would preclude him from remaining in his present position beyond the 12th of October. This renewed delay dispirited his own troops, and swelled the numbers of the hostile army, which received recruits from every quarter. On the 7th of October, Burgoyne in person, accompanied by Generals Phillips, Reidesel, and Fraser, issued from

---

Why did Burgoyne spare the Indian's life? What letters were written?

What were their contents?

On the 7th Oct. what took place?

his camp at the head of 1500 men, for the purpose of making a reconnoissance and of foraging. This movement brought on a general engagement, at the close of which the British were driven within their lines, and a part of them was forced. This circumstance compelled Burgoyne to change his position, which maneuver he performed in a masterly manner, and without sustaining any loss. It was, indeed, from this time, the policy of the American general to avoid a pitched battle, and to reduce his enemy by harrassing him and cutting off his retreat, and depriving him of supplies.

The situation of General Burgoyne was most distressing. By extraordinary efforts he had forced his way to within a few miles of Albany, the point of his destination, and had he been seconded by correspondent exertions on the part of the British southern army, he would have effected the object of his campaign. Sir Henry Clinton seems to have had no precise or early instructions as to co-operating with him. Certain it is, that it was not till the third of October that he moved up the Hudson to his assistance.\* Sir Henry easily surmounted every obstacle which presented itself on his route. He took Fort Montgomery by assault, and by removing a boom and chain which was

\* "The expedition of Sir H. Clinton up Hudson river "could not before have been attempted, without leaving the defences of New York too feebly guarded." A body of recruits arrived from Europe at New York about the last of September, and it was then undertaken; but, if Stedman be correct, the relief of Burgoyne was not primarily intended. "The object of Sir Henry Clinton was to take possession of the forts which forbade the passage of our [British] vessels up to Albany; and the ulterior view in the measure was not so much to create a diversion in favor of General Burgoyne (the necessity of which was not suspected), as to open a communication which might have been important when that commander should have fixed himself at Albany." *Stedman*, i. 353.

---

What was the policy of the Americans from this time?

Why did Gen. Burgoyne not reach Albany?

stretched from that fortress across the Hudson, he opened the navigation of that river to his flotilla, which, with a fair wind might have speedily made its passage to Half Moon, within sixteen miles of Gates's encampment. But instead of hastening to the relief of their countrymen, the several divisions of Clinton's army employed themselves in plundering and burning the towns and villages situated on the banks of the river, and in the adjacent country.— Amongst those who distinguished themselves in this predatory warfare, General Vaughan rendered himself pre-eminently conspicuous. Having been ordered to advance up the river, by Sir Henry Clinton, he landed at the town of *Æsopus*, and finding it evacuated by the American forces, to whom its defence had been intrusted, though he did not encounter the slightest opposition on the part of the inhabitants, he permitted his troops to plunder it, and afterwards so completely reduced it to ashes, that he did not leave a single house standing. This outrage excited a cry of indignation throughout the United States, and drew from General Gates a letter of severe remonstrance. But the British had much more reason to inculpate Vaughan than the Americans. His delay at *Æsopus* sealed the ruin of the royal cause. Vaughan was at *Æsopus* on the 13th of October. The tide of the flood would have borne him, in four hours, to Albany, where he might have destroyed Gates's stores, and thus have reduced the American general to the necessity of liberating General Burgoyne, who did not surrender till the 16th, and of retreating into New

---

What were Sir Henry Clinton's movements?

How did Gen. Vaughan distinguish himself?

What was excited by this outrage?

What effect had his delay on the royal cause?      Why so?

At what time did Burgoyne surrender?

England. Upon such narrow turns of contingencies does the issue of the combinations of warfare frequently depend?

---

## SECTION XXIV.

### CONVENTION OF SARATOGA, 13TH OF OCTOBER, 1777.

In the mean time, the difficulties in which Burgoyne was involved were hourly accumulating. With a view of cutting off his retreat, Gates posted 1400 men opposite the fords of Saratoga, and 2000 more on the road from that place to Fort Edward. On receiving intelligence of this, Burgoyne retreated to Saratoga, leaving his sick and wounded to the humanity of the enemy. Finding it impossible to force his way over the fords of Saratoga, he attempted to open to his army a passage to Lake George; but the artificers, whom he sent under a strong escort to repair the bridges on the road thither, were driven away by the American forces. The road to Fort Edward, also, was found by the scouts who had been sent to reconnoiter in that direction, to be strongly guarded. When the 13th day of October arrived, Burgoyne had received no satisfactory tidings from Clinton's army. He saw himself in a manner surrounded by the enemy, whose cannon-shot flew in every direction through his camp. Though he had for some time past put his troops on short allowance, he found on inspection that he had only three days' rations left in his stores. In these trying circumstances, with heavy heart he summoned a council of war, which came to a

---

Why did Burgoyne retreat to Saratoga?

Describe his situation?

unanimous resolution, that in their present position they would be justified in accepting a capitulation on honorable terms. A negotiation was accordingly opened. The first proposal of Gates, namely, that the royal forces should ground their arms in their lines, and surrender prisoners at discretion, was indignantly rejected. After further discussion, a convention was at length agreed upon, the principal conditions of which were, 'that the British troops were to march out of their camp with the honors of war and the artillery of the entrenchments to the verge of the river, where the arms and the artillery were to be left; the arms to be piled by word of command from their own officers; and that a free passage was to be granted to the army to Great Britain, upon condition of not serving again in North America during the present contest.' Though the first proposals of General Gates were harsh, his subsequent conduct was marked with the characteristics of conciliation and delicacy. When the convention was signed, he withdrew his troops into their lines, to spare the British the pain of piling their arms in the presence of a triumphant enemy. He received the vanquished general with the respect due to his valor and to his military skill; and in an entertainment which he gave at his quarters to the principal British officers, his urbanity and kindness soothed the mortification which could not but embitter their spirits.

By the convention of Saratoga, 5790 men surrendered as prisoners; and besides the muskets piled by these cap-

---

What did his counsel resolve?

What was the first proposal of Gates?

How was it received?

What was the second proposal?

How did Gates receive the vanquished?

What was the number of prisoners that surrendered?

tives, thirty-five brass field-pieces, and a variety of stores were given up to the victors.\*

## SECTION XXV.

### TREATY WITH FRANCE, 6TH OF FEBRUARY, 1778.

Immediately after the surrender of Burgoyne, Gates moved down the Hudson to put a stop to the devastation of the country by Clinton's army, which, on his approach, retired to New York. He then sent forward a considerable reinforcement to General Washington, who, soon after

\*\* The whole number, which surrendered, was 5752.

British troops,	2442
Brunswick and other German troops,	2198
Canadians, Volunteers, &c.	1100
Staff,	12
	—5752

Sick and wounded left in the British camp when Burgoyne began his retreat,	528
Besides the above, there were killed, wounded, taken, and deserted, between 6th July and 16th October,	2933
	—
Total,	9213"

*Remembrancer for 1777, p. 477.*

"The whole army of Gen. Gates consisted of 9093 continental troops. The number of the militia fluctuated; but, when the convention was signed, it amounted to 4129. The sick exceeded 2500. At the same time there were 39 brass cannon complete, royals and mortars included; 5000 stand of arms; 400 sets of harness, a number of ammunition wagons, &c. The troops under Gen. Burgoyne were to march out of their camp with the honors of war; and a free passage was to be granted them to Great Britain, on condition of not serving again in North America during the present contest."

What the number of brass field pieces taken?

Where did Gates move to after the surrender of Burgoyne? For what

object? What did he send forward to Gen. Washington?

Where did Clinton retire to?

its arrival, advanced to White Marsh, within fourteen miles of Philadelphia, where he encamped in a strong position. When General Howe received intelligence of this movement, he marched out of his quarters on the night of the 4th of December; but after various maneuvers, finding that he could gain no advantage over his vigilant adversary, he returned to Philadelphia. Washington then took up his winter quarters about sixteen miles from the city, at a place called Valley Forge, where his men, ill-supplied as they were with clothing, blankets, and other comforts, cheerfully constructed huts to shelter themselves from the inclemency of the season. By taking up this position he protected the province of Pennsylvania from the incursions of the enemy, and reduced the fruits of Howe's various successes to the occupation of a single additional city—an advantage by no means calculated to console the British for the loss of an able general, and a gallant army.

General Burgoyne had drunk deep of the bitter cup of affliction at Saratoga; but he was doomed to suffer still farther mortification. As the British regarded the Americans as rebels, they did not always in the course of hostilities observe towards them those rules which guide the conduct of nations engaged in war against a foreign enemy. The truth of history, indeed, cannot suppress the melancholy fact, that at the beginning of the contest, and, occasionally, during its progress, the treatment of the American prisoners, on the part of the British authorities, was extremely harsh and severe; and that capitulations made with such portions of the patriotic army, as had by the fortune of war been reduced to a surrender, had not always been observed

---

What movements were made by Washington and Howe?

Where were their winter quarters?

Describe Gen. Washington's army.

What cannot be suppressed?

with courtesy, or even with a due and strict regard to their essential provisions. The congress, reflecting on these incidents, felt no small apprehension that if the army which had surrendered at Saratoga should be allowed to embark, instead of sailing for England, according to the terms of the capitulation, it would join the forces of General Howe. They therefore studied to find a pretext for breaking the convention. For this purpose they addressed a number of queries to General Gates, as to the manner in which the British had fulfilled the conditions of their surrender, but he assured them that on the part of the British the convention had been exactly observed. The pretext, however, which they could not obtain from their gallant countryman, was supplied by the imprudence of Burgoyne. Among other articles of the convention, it had been stipulated that the captive British officers should during their stay in America, be accommodated with quarters correspondent to their rank. This stipulation having been but ill observed in the crowded barracks at Cambridge, near Boston, where the surrendered army was quartered, Burgoyne addressed to Gates a letter of remonstrance on this subject, in which he declared that by the treatment which his officers had experienced, 'the public faith plighted at Saratoga, had been broken on the part of the United States.' Gates, in the discharge of his duty, transmitted this letter to congress, who read it with joy; and affecting to find in the phrase above quoted, a pretext set up by the British general to vindicate a meditated violation of the convention, they resolved that 'the embarkation of General Burgoyne and the troops under his command should be suspended till a distinct and explicit ratification of the con-

---

What pretext did Congress wish to find?      Why?

How did congress obtain the same?

What resolution was passed thereupon?

vention of Saratoga should be properly notified by the court of Great Britain.' In vain did Burgoyne remonstrate against this resolution—in vain did he explain his phraseology, and offer to give any conceivable pledge of the sincerity of his intentions to fulfil his engagements. The congress was execrable—his troops remained as prisoners; and after wasting some time in vain endeavors to procure them redress, he sailed on his parole for England, where he was refused admittance into the presence of his sovereign, denied the justice of a court-martial on his conduct, and subjected to a series of ministerial persecutions—grievous, indeed, to a sensitive mind, but, in effect, more disgraceful to their inflictors than to their victim.

At the time when the American leaders contemplated the declaration of independence, they entertained sanguine hopes that the rivalry which had so long subsisted between France and England would induce the former power to assist them in throwing off the yoke of the mother country; and early in the year 1776, the congress sent Silas Deane as their accredited agent to Paris, where he was afterwards joined by Dr. Franklin and Arthur Lee, and instructed to solicit the French court to enter into a treaty of alliance and commerce with the United States. The celebrity of Franklin gained him the respect, and his personal qualities obtained him the esteem of individuals of the highest rank in the French capital. But the Comte de Vergennes, then prime minister, acted with caution. He gave the Americans secret aid, and connived at various measures

---

How was Burgoyne received in England?

What hopes had been entertained by the American leaders?

By whom were the United States represented at Paris?

What were their instructions?

What is said of Franklin?

Who was the French prime minister?

which their agents took to further their cause, by the procuring of arms and military stores, and by annoying the British commerce. The encouragement which Franklin and his associates received, varied according to the success or disasters of the American forces.\* But the capture of Burgoyne's army decided the hesitating councils of France; and on the 6th of February, 1778, his most christian majesty acknowledged and guaranteed the independence of the United States, and entered into a treaty of alliance and commerce with the infant republic of North America. Of this circumstance the French ambassador, on the 13th of March, gave official notice to his majesty's ministers in a rescript couched in respectful terms, but concluding with an intimation, 'that the French king, being determined effectually to protect the lawful commerce of his subjects, and to

\* 'The American commissioners at Paris wrote to congress on the 18th of December, 1777, acknowledging the receipt of Despatches of the 6th of October, dated at York Town. "They came to us by a packet from Boston, which brought the great news of Burgoyne's defeat and surrender, news that apparently occasioned as much general joy in France, as if it had been a victory of their own troops over their own enemies; such is the universally warm and sincere good will and attachment to us and our cause in this nation. We took the opportunity of pressing the ministry, by a short memorial, to a conclusion of our proposed Treaty, which had so long been under their consideration, and been from time to time postponed. On signifying to the ministry the importance it might be at this juncture, when probably Britain would be making some proposition of accommodation, that the congress should be informed explicitly what might be expected from France and Spain, M. Gerard, one of the secretaries came yesterday to inform us by order of the king, that after long and full consideration of our affairs and propositions in council, it was decided, and his majesty was determined to acknowledge our Independence, and make Treaty with us of Amity and Commerce."

MS. *Papers of the late Chief Justice Dana.*

---

What was his conduct towards the American agents?

On the 6th of February, 1778, what did the French king do?

What decided the councils of France?

In what terms was the rescript couched?

maintain the dignity of his flag, had, in consequence taken effectual measures for these purposes, in concert with the United States of America. With whatever urbanity this communication might be made by the ambassador, the British ministers regarded it, as it was intended to be, as a declaration of war; and on the 17th of March they notified its reception to the House of Commons. Their notification was accompanied by a message from the king, expressing the necessity he was under to resent this unprovoked aggression, and his firm reliance on the zealous and affectionate support of his faithful people. To this message the Commons returned a dutiful answer, assuring his majesty that they would stand by him in asserting the dignity of the crown, and the honor of the nation.

---

## SECTION XXVI.

### REJECTION OF LORD NORTH'S OVERTURES, JUNE, 1778.

The intelligence of the surrender of General Burgoyne and his army overwhelmed Lord North with dismay; and the annunciation of the treaty between the United States and France at once dissipated the feeble hope which he might yet have entertained of subduing the revolted colonies by force of arms. His only remaining resource, then, to prevent that jewel from being forever torn from the British crown, was to form, by an act of parliament, a kind of federal union with the North American provinces, which, whilst it reserved their allegiance to the British sovereign, should virtually concede to them the entire man-

---

How was this regarded by the British ministers?

What answer was returned by the House of Commons?

How was the news of Burgoyne's surrender received by Lord North?

Whose hope was dissipated? By what?

To what did he resort?

agement of their internal concerns. With this view, on the 17th of February, 1778, he introduced into the House of Commons two conciliatory bills, by which he proposed to concede to the colonies every thing which they demanded before their declaration of independence, viz: exemption from internal parliamentary taxation, the appointment of their own governors and superior magistrates; and, moreover, an exemption from the keeping up of any military force in any of the colonies without the consent of their respective assemblies. It was provided, that commissioners should be appointed by the crown, to negotiate with the congress on the basis of these propositions. The speech in which his lordship introduced these bills into the House of Commons was marked by a curious mixture of humiliation of tone, and affected confidence and courage. The coercive acts, which under his influence had been passed into laws, were, said he, such as appeared to be necessary at the time, though in the event they had produced effects which he had never intended. As soon as he found that they had failed in their object, before a sword was drawn he brought forward a conciliatory proposition (meaning the act for admitting to the king's peace any individual colonies which might make the requisite concessions); but that in consequence of the proposition having been made the subject of debate in parliament, it went damned to America, so that the congress conceived, or took occasion to represent it, as a scheme for sowing divisions, and introducing taxation among them in a worse mode than the

---

What was the character of the two bills which he introduced into the House of Commons?

What did they provide?

By what was his speech marked?

What did he first say?

former. Then, making a fatal admission of the trifling nature of the object which had produced so much ill blood between the colonies and the mother country, he confessed that his idea never had been to draw any considerable revenue from America; that his wish was, that the colonists should contribute in a very low proportion to the expenses of Great Britain. He was very well aware that American taxation could never produce a beneficial revenue, and that many taxes could not be laid or collected in the colonies. The stamp-act, however, seemed to be judiciously chosen as a fiscal experiment, as it interested every man who had any dealing or property to defend or recover, in the collection of the tax and the execution of the statute; but this experiment had failed in consequence of the obstinacy of the Americans, in transacting all business without using the stamps prescribed by law. The act enabling the East India Company to send tea to America on their own account, and with the draw-back of the whole duty in England, was a relief instead of an oppression; but this measure had been defeated by contraband traders, who had too successfully misrepresented it as an invasion of colonial rights. Having thus detailed the difficulties with which ministers had been called to struggle in legislating for so perverse a generation as the Americans had proved themselves to be, his lordship then proceeded to open his plan, the outline of which has been given above; and, in descanting on the ample powers with which he proposed to invest the commissioners, and foreseeing that the Americans might refuse to treat with these agents of the Sovereign without a previous acknowledgement of their indepen-

---

Then what did he admit?

What did he say of the stamp-act?

What about the *tea*?

What did he then proceed to?

dence, he humbled himself so far as to say, that he would not insist on their renouncing their independence till the treaty should receive its final ratification from the King and parliament of Great Britain; and then, in a manner confessing that, instead of a sovereign assembly the parliament was reduced to the condition of a suppliant to the mutinous colonies, he proposed that the commissioners should be instructed to negotiate with them for some reasonable and moderate contribution towards the common defence of the empire when re-united; but, to take away all pretence for not terminating this unhappy difference, the contribution was not to be insisted on as a *sine qua non* of the treaty; but that if the Americans should refuse so reasonable and equitable a proposition, they were not to look for support from that part of the empire to whose expense they had refused to contribute. Weakly attempting to obviate the imputation that these pacific measures were the fruit of fear, occasioned by the recent successes of the insurgents, he called the House to witness that he had declared for conciliation at the beginning of the session, when he thought that the victories of General Howe had been more decisive, and when he knew nothing of the misfortunes of Burgoyne. He acknowledged that the events of the war had turned out very differently from his expectation, but maintained that for the disappointment of the hopes of the public no blame was imputable to himself; that he had promised that a great army should be sent out, and a great army, an army of upwards of 60,000 men, had been sent out; that he had promised that a great fleet should be employed, and a great fleet had been employed;

---

How far did he humble himself?

What did he in a manner confess? What did he propose?

What did he weakly attempt?

What did he acknowledge?

What maintain? Why?

that he had engaged that this army and this fleet should be provided with every kind of supply, and that they had been supplied most amply and liberally, and might be so for years to come; and that if the House was deceived, they had deceived themselves. The prime minister, having thus by implication attributed the failure of his plans to the commanders of the British forces employed to conduct the war, concluded his speech by a boastful assertion, that the strength of the nation was still entire; that its resources were ample, and that it was able, if it were necessary, to carry on the war much longer. The disavowal on the part of Lord North of any intention to raise a revenue in America, seems to have given no little umbrage to the country gentlemen, whose organ, Mr. Baldwin, exclaimed, that he had been deceived by the minister; that three years ago he had asked him whether a revenue was meant by the measures which he then proposed to enforce; that he was answered it was, and that upon that ground alone he had hitherto voted with the ministry. The regular opposition were, upon the whole, more moderate than the landed aristocracy. Mr. Fox approved of Lord North's propositions, which, he reminded him, were in substance the same as those which were in vain brought forward by Mr. Burke about three years before. He did not, however, restrain himself from making some severe animadversions on the policy of the Premier, all whose arguments, he asserted, might be collected into one point, his excuses all reduced to one apology—his total ignorance. 'He hoped,' exclaimed the indignant orator, 'he hoped,

---

To whom did the Prime Minister attribute the failure?

How was this speech received?

What did Mr. Baldwin say?

What did Mr. Fox say of the Premier's policy?

To what might Lord North's excuses be reduced?

How did Mr. Fox proceed in his observations?

and was disappointed; he [expected a great deal, and found little to answer his expectations. He thought the Americans would have submitted to his laws, and they resisted them. He thought they would have submitted to his armies, and they were beaten by inferior numbers. He made conciliatory propositions, and he thought they would succeed, but they were rejected. He appointed commissioners to make peace, and he thought they had powers; but he found they could not make peace, and nobody believed they had any powers. He had said many such things as he had thought fit in his conciliatory propositions; he thought it a proper method of quieting the Americans upon the affair of taxation. If any person should give himself the trouble of reading that proposition, he would find not one word of it correspondent to the representation made of it by its framer. The short account of it was, that the noble lord in the proposition assured the colonies, that when Parliament had taxed them as much as they thought proper, they would tax them no more.' In conclusion, however, Mr. Fox said 'that he would vote for the present proposition, because it was much more clear and satisfactory, for necessity had caused him to speak plain.' The conciliatory bills, in their passage through the two Houses, excited many animated debates, in the course of which Lord North was exposed to much animadversion, which he seems to have borne with great equanimity. At length, all points relative to them being settled by Parliament, they were sanctioned by the royal assent. But the urgency of danger would not allow ministers to wait till they were passed into a law; and the same statesmen who had a little time before treated the petitions of the colonies with scorn and contempt, hastened to commu-

---

How close? At length what was done?

What did ministers hasten to do?

nicate their propositions whilst yet in the shape of bills, to the Congress, in hopes that the adoption on their part of a milder policy might be met with a similar spirit of conciliation on the other side of the Atlantic. These documents were dispatched in such haste, that they arrived at New York in time to be presented by Sir William Howe to the Congress, before that assembly had received intelligence of the signature of their treaty of alliance with France. The American legislators did not, however, hesitate as to the line of conduct which in these circumstances it became them to pursue. They peremptorily rejected the proposals of Lord North as insidious and unsatisfactory. During the progress of the conciliatory bills, and after their passing, frequent and animated debates took place in both Houses of Parliament, relative to the foreign and domestic policy of the country. In the House of Lords, the Duke of Richmond took the lead in discussing these subjects, and on the 7th of April, he made an impressive speech on the state of the nation, in which he maintained, that the salvation of the country required the withdrawing of the British troops from North America, and even not obscurely hinted that, for the acquisition of peace, it would be politic to agree to the independence of the colonies. As his grace's sentiments on the latter point were no secret, and as it was to be expected that he would propound them on this occasion, Lord Chatham, now laboring under the weight of seventy years, rendered more heavy by acute bodily suffering, regardless of his infirmities, attended in his place for the purpose of raising his voice against the duke's proposition. 'My Lords,' exclaimed the venera-

---

How did congress receive the proposals of Lord North?

Who took the lead in the House of Lords?

What did he maintain in his speech on the 7th of April?

Who was Lord Chatham and what did he say?

ble orator, 'I rejoice that the grave has not closed upon me, and that I am still alive to lift up my voice against the dismemberment of this ancient and most noble monarchy.' He then proceeded, in the most energetic terms, to urge his auditors to the most vigorous efforts against their new enemy, the House of Bourbon; and concluded by calling upon them, if they must fall, to fall like men. The Duke of Richmond having replied to this speech, Lord Chatham attempted to rise for the purpose of rebutting his grace's arguments, and of proposing his own plan for putting an end to the contest with America, which is understood to have been the establishment with the colonies, upon the most liberal terms, of a kind of federal union under one common monarch. But the powers of nature within him were exhausted; he fainted under the effort which he made to give utterance to his sentiments, and being conveyed to his favorite seat of Haynes, in Kent, he expired on the 11th of May. This firmness on the part of congress augured ill for the success of the British commissioners, Lord Carlisle, Mr. Eden, and Governor Johnstone, who arrived at New York on the 9th of June, and without loss of time attempted to open a negotiation with the congress. Their overtures were officially answered by President Laurens in a letter, by which he apprised them that the American government were determined to maintain their independence; but were willing to treat for peace with his Britannic Majesty on condition of his withdrawing his fleets and armies from their country. Thus foiled in their attempt at public negotiation, the commissioners had re-

---

What did he then urge?

Who answered him?

What happened to Lord Chatham on his attempt to reply?

Who composed the British Commissioners?

How were their overtures answered by President Laurens?

course to private intrigue. Governor Johnstone, from his long residence in America, was personally acquainted with many of the leading members of congress, to some of whom he addressed letters; vaguely intimating the great rewards and honors which awaited those who would lend their aid in putting an end to the present troubles; and in one instance, he privately offered to an individual, for his services on this behalf, the sum of £10,000 sterling, and any place in the colonies in his Majesty's gift. These clandestine overtures of the governor were uniformly rejected with contempt, and the congress having been apprised of them, declared them direct attempts at corruption; and resolved that it was incompatible with their honor to hold any correspondence or intercourse with him. This resolution, which was adhered to, notwithstanding the explanations and denials of Johnstone, and the disavowal of his proceedings by his brother commissioners, drew forth from these pacifiers an angry manifesto, in which they virtually threatened the Union with a war of devastation, declaring that 'if the British colonies were to become an accession to France, the laws of self-preservation would direct Great Britain to render the accession of as little avail as possible to the enemy.' Whilst congress gave notice that the bearers of the copies of this manifesto were not entitled to the protection of a flag, they showed how little they dreaded the impression which it might make, by giving it an extensive circulation in their newspapers.

---

What did Gov. Johnstone attempt?

How were his overtures received?

What manifesto was issued?

## SECTION XXVII.

## ARRIVAL OF THE FRENCH FLEET.

General Howe spent the spring of the year 1778 nearly in a state of inaction, confining his operations to the sending out of foraging and predatory parties, which did some mischief to the country, but little service to the royal cause. From this lethargy he was roused by the receipt of orders from the British ministry, to evacuate Philadelphia without delay. These orders were sent under the apprehension, that if a French fleet should block up his squadron in the Delaware, whilst Washington inclosed him on the land side, he would share the fate of Burgoyne. On the 18th of June, therefore, he quitted the Pennsylvanian capital, and crossed into New Jersey, whither he was speedily followed by Washington, who, keeping a strict watch on his movements, had taken measures to harass him on his march, which was encumbered with baggage. The American commander, on his arrival at Princeton, hearing that General Clinton, with a large division of the British forces, had quitted the direct road to Staten Island, the place of rendezvous appointed for General Howe's army, and was marching for Sandy Hook, sent a detachment in pursuit of him, and followed with his whole army to support it; and as Clinton made preparations to meet the meditated attack, he sent forward reinforcements to keep the British in check. These reinforcements were commanded by General Lee, whom Washington, on his advancing in person, met in full retreat. After a short and

How did Gen. Howe spend the spring of 1778?

Why did Howe leave Philadelphia? Where did he march?

Why were these orders sent to him,

By whom was he followed?

Describe what followed between Clinton and Washington?

N

angry parley, Lee again advanced, and was driven back; but Clinton's forces next encountering the main body of the American army, were repulsed in their turn, and taking advantage of the night, the approach of which in all probability, saved them from utter discomfiture, they withdrew to Sandy Hook, leaving behind them such of their wounded as could not with safety be removed. For his conduct on this occasion, Lee was brought to a court-martial, and sentenced to be suspended from any command in the armies of the United States for the term of one year. After this engagement Washington marched to White Plains, which are situated a few miles to the north-east-ward of New York Island. Here he continued unmolested by the neighboring enemy, from the beginning of July, till the latter end of autumn, when he retired to take up his winter-quarters in huts which he had caused to be constructed at Middlebrook, in Jersey.

According to the prognostic of the British ministry, the Count d'Estaing, with a fleet of twelve ships of the line and three frigates, arrived off the mouth of the Delaware in the month of July; but found to his mortification, that eleven days before that period Lord Howe had withdrawn from that river to the harbor of New York. D'Estaing immediately sailed for Sandy Hook; but after continuing at anchor there eleven days, during which time he captured about twenty English merchantmen, finding that he could not work his line-of-battle ships over the bar, by the advice of General Washington he sailed for Newport, with a view

---

For what was Gen. Lee suspended?

Where did Washington march?

How long did he remain at the White Plains?

Where did Washington take up winter-quarters?

What fleet arrived, and where?

What did the Count do at Sandy Hook?

Where did he then proceed?

of co-operating with the Americans in driving the British from Rhode Island, of which province they had been in possession for upwards of a year and a half. This project, however, completely failed. Lord Howe appearing with his fleet off Newport, the French admiral came out of the harbor to give him battle; but, before the hostile armaments could encounter, a violent storm arose, which damaged both fleets so much, that the British were compelled to return to New York, whilst D'Estaing withdrew to refit in Boston harbor. His retirement subjected the American army, which had entered Rhode Island, under General Sullivan, to great peril; but by the skill of its commander, it was withdrawn from the province with little loss. Towards the latter end of this year the British arms were signally successful in Georgia, the capital of which province was taken by Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, who conducted himself with such prudence, and manifested so conciliatory a spirit, that he made no small advances in reconciling the Georgians to their ancient government.

The arrival of the French fleet had filled the Americans with sanguine expectations that they should now be able to put an end to the war by some decisive stroke; and in proportion to the elevation of their hopes was the bitterness of their mortification, that the only result of the co-operation of their ally was the recovery of Philadelphia. On the other hand, the British ministry were grievously disappointed on learning that the issue of this campaign, as far as regarded their main army, was the exchange by General Howe of his narrow quarters in the Pennsylvanian capital for the not much more extended ones of New York Island. Hitherto they seem to have carried on the war under the

---

What prevented a naval engagement?

Describe the success of the British arms in Georgia.

In what were the British ministry disappointed?

idea that the majority of the inhabitants of the colonies were favorably disposed towards the royal government, and were only restrained from manifesting their loyalty by a faction whom it would be easy with their assistance to subdue, but from this period they appear to have conducted their hostilities in a spirit of desperation and revenge.

---

## SECTION XXVIII.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1779.

With a view of alarming the insurgent colonies by subjecting them to the unmitigated horrors of war, Sir Henry Clinton, on the 10th of May, 1779, sent an expedition into Virginia, under the command of Sir George Collier and General Matthews, who, landing at Portsmouth, proceeded to Suffolk, which town they reduced to ashes, and after burning and capturing upwards of 130 vessels of different sizes, and devastating the country in their line of march, sailed back loaded with booty to New York. About five weeks after their return, Governor Tryon, having received orders to attack the coast of Connecticut,\* landed at East Haven, which he devoted to the flames, in violation of his

“\* Early in the morning of the 5th of July, the fleet, consisting of about 40 sail, anchored off West Haven; and at sunrise, a detachment of 1000 troops, under general Garth, landed at that place. No soldiers were at this time stationed at New Haven; but the militia and citizens made instant preparations to harass the enemy, whom they could not hope effectually to resist. Captain James Hillhouse with a small band of brave young men, some of whom were students at Yale College, advanced very near the royal troops while on parade near West Haven church; and, when they commenced their march, fired on the advanced guards, and drove them back to the main body. The enemy,

---

What idea hitherto prevailed.

In 1779, what did Sir Henry Clinton do?

Describe the occurrences in Virginia, also those in Connecticut.

promise of protection to all the inhabitants who should remain in their homes. Thence he proceeded to Fairfield and Norwalk, which were given up to plunder, and then destroyed. He effected this mischief with little loss in the space of ten days, at the end of which time he returned to the British head-quarters to make a report of his proceedings, to the commander-in-chief. Whilst this mode of warfare was carrying on, Washington could spare very few men for the defence of the invaded districts. His at-

though checked in their march, proceeded in force, and entered New Haven about one in the afternoon, from which time until eight in the evening the town was subjected to almost indiscriminate ravage and plunder. During these transactions on the west side of the harbor, Governor Tryon landed about 1000 troops at East Haven; and, though severely harassed, effected a junction with Garth's division in New Haven. The enemy evacuated the town the next morning. The fleet left the harbor the succeeding night, and the morning after anchored off Fairfield. The militia of that town and the vicinity, posting themselves at the court house green, gave the enemy considerable annoyance, as they advanced; but soon retreated. The royal army plundered and burned the town; and the greatest part of the neighboring village of Green Farms. A few days afterwards they laid the town of Norwalk in ashes.

"At East Haven the British burned several houses; but they burned nothing in New Haven, excepting some stores on the Long Wharf. There were burnt at Fairfield 85 dwelling houses, 2 churches, a handsome court house, several school houses, 55 barns, 15 stores, and 15 shops; at Green Farms, 15 dwelling houses, 1 church, 11 barns, and several stores; at Norwalk, 80 dwelling houses, 2 churches, 87 barns, 17 shops, 4 mills, and 5 vessels.—The royal commanders, in addresses to the inhabitants of the places which they invaded, invited them to return to their allegiance, and promised protection to all who should remain peaceably in their usual places of residence. One of these addresses was sent by a flag to Colonel Whiting of the militia near Fairfield, who was allowed an hour for his answer; but he had scarcely time to read the address before the town was in flames. His answer expressed at once the general principles of the colony, and the certain influence of this outrage: "Connecticut, having nobly dared to take up arms against the cruel despotism of Great Britain, and the flames having preceded the answer to your flag, they will persist to oppose to the utmost the power exerted against injured innocence."—The loss of the British troops in this expedition was 20 killed, 96 wounded, and 32 missing."

tention was engrossed by the main army of the British, to keep which in check he posted his forces at West Point, and on the opposite bank of the Hudson, pushing his patrols to the vicinity of his adversary's lines. As the British occupied with a strong garrison Stoney Point, some miles to the south of his position, he, on the 15th of July, despatched General Wayne with a competent force to dislodge them from that important post. This attempt was crowned with success. Wayne took the British works by storm, and brought off 543 prisoners, fifteen pieces of cannon, and a considerable quantity of military stores. Washington did not, however, think it prudent for the present to attempt to establish himself at Stoney Point, and it was speedily re-occupied by the British. Another instance of the enterprising boldness of the Americans soon after occurred in the surprise of the British garrison at Powles-Hook, opposite to New York, which was attacked on the 19th of July, by Major Lee, who stormed the works and took 160 prisoners, whom he brought safely to the American lines. The joy which the Americans felt at the success of these daring enterprises was, however, damped by the failure of an expedition undertaken by the State of Massachusetts to dispossess the British of a fort which they had erected at Penobscot in the district of Maine. They here lost the whole of their flotilla, which was destroyed or captured by Sir George Collier, whilst their land forces were compelled to seek for safety by retreating through the woods.

Spain having now declared war against Great Britain, it was hoped by sanguine politicians, favorable to the cause

---

What was Washington doing during this time?

What was accomplished by Gen. Wayne?

What by Major Lee?

What expedition failed?

What example did Spain follow?

of the new republic, that this additional pressure of foreign foes would compel the British ministry to withdraw their forces from North America. But the energies of the mother country were roused in proportion to the increase of her peril. Her fleets maintained their wonted sovereignty over the ocean, and her monarch was determined to strain every nerve to reduce his revolted colonies to obedience; and at this period the ease with which the reduction of Georgia had been effected, and the advantages which it might afford in making an attack upon the rest of the southern States, induced his ministers to renew their efforts in that quarter. The back settlements, as well as those of the Carolinas, abounded with enterprising men of desperate fortunes, as also with tories who had been compelled, by the persecution which they sustained from the more ardent republicans, to withdraw into these wilds from the more settled part of the country. These adventurers and loyalists having joined the royal forces under the command of Major-general Prescot, which had also received reinforcements from Florida, that officer found himself in a condition to commence active operations. His preparations filled the neighboring States with alarm. The American regular troops had, with few exceptions, been sent from the Carolinas to reinforce the army of General Washington; and the only reliance of the republicans in this portion of the union rested on the militia, the command of which was delegated by congress to General Lincoln. On inspecting his forces, Lincoln found them ill equipped and very deficient in discipline. In these circumstances, the activity of the enemy did not allow him any time to train them. Soon after his arrival at head-quarters, a division of the royal

---

What was the state of affairs in the southern states?

What British General commanded there?

What American?

army advanced, under the command of Major Gardiner, to take possession of Port Royal, in South Carolina, but was driven back with loss by General Moultrie. This repulse for a while suspended the enterprise of the British, who took post at Augusta and Ebenezer, situated on the Savannah river, which forms the boundary between Georgia and South Carolina. Here they waited in expectation of being joined by a body of tories, who had been collected in the upper parts of the latter province. But these obnoxious allies, giving way to long-smothered resentment, were guilty of such atrocities on their march, that the country rose upon them, and they fell an easy prey to a detachment commanded by Colonel Pickens, sent to intercept them at Kettle Creek. Five of the prisoners taken on this occasion, were tried and executed for bearing arms against the United States. This proceeding led to acts of retaliation on the part of the tories and the king's troops, which for a long time gave in the southern States additional horror to the miseries of war. Emboldened by his success, Lincoln sent an expedition into Georgia, with a view of repressing the incursions of the enemy, but his forces were surprised by General Prevost, from whom they sustained so signal a defeat, that, of 1500 men, of which the expedition consisted, only 450 returned to his camp. In this emergency, the legislative body of South Carolina invested their governor, Mr. John Rutledge, and his council, with an almost absolute authority, by virtue of which, a considerable force of militia was embodied and stationed in the center of the State, to act as necessity might require. Putting himself at the head of these new levies, Lincoln again determined to carry

---

Describe what passed at Port Royal?

What gave additional horrors to the war?

Describe the occurrences in Georgia.

What was done by the legislature of S. C?

the war into the enemy's quarters; and, crossing the Savannah, near Augusta, marched into Georgia, and proceeded towards the capital of that province. Prevost instantly took advantage of this movement to invade South Carolina, at the head of 2400 men; and, driving Moultrie before him, pushed forward towards Charleston. At this time, his superiority appeared to be so decisive, that Moultrie's troops began to desert in great numbers, and many of the inhabitants, with real or affected zeal, embraced the royal cause. On his appearance before Charleston, the garrison of that place, which consisted of 3300 men, sent commissioners to propose a neutrality on their part during the remainder of the war. This proposal he rejected, and made preparations to attack the town, which was respectably fortified. But, whilst he was wasting time in negotiations, Lincoln was hastening from Georgia to the relief of the place; and on the near approach of the American army, fearing to be exposed to two fires, he withdrew his forces across Ashley river, and encamped on some small islands bordering on the sea-coast. Here he was attacked by Lincoln, who was, however, repulsed with loss, in consequence of the failure of a part of his combinations. Notwithstanding this success, the British general did not think it advisable to maintain his present position, but retreated to Port Royal, and thence to Savannah.

The Americans retired to Sheldon, in the vicinity of Beaufort, which is situated at about an equal distance from Charleston and Savannah. Here they remained in a state of tranquillity till the beginning of September, when they

---

Where did Lincoln determine to carry the war?

What did Prevost then do?

Describe the movements at Charleston?

What movement did Lincoln make?

What farther took place?

were aroused from their inaction by the appearance off the coast of the fleet of D'Estaing, who had proceeded towards the close of the preceding year from Boston to the West Indies, whence, after capturing St. Vincent's and Granada, he had returned to the assistance of the allies of his sovereign. At the sight of this armament, which consisted of 20 sail of the line, and 13 frigates, the republicans exulted in the sanguine hope of capturing their enemies, or of expelling them from their country. The militia mustered with alacrity in considerable force, and marched under the command of General Lincoln to the vicinity of Savannah. Before their arrival, D'Estaing had summoned the town, and had granted to General Prevost a suspension of hostilities for twenty-four hours, for the purpose of settling the terms of a capitulation. But during that interval, the British commander received a reinforcement of several hundred men, who had forced their way from Beaufort; encouraged by which seasonable aid, he determined to hold out to the last extremity. The allied forces, therefore, commenced the siege of the place in form; but D'Estaing, finding that much time would be consumed in regular approaches, and dreading the hurricanes which prevail on the southern coast of America at that season, resolved on an assault. In conjunction with Lincoln, he led his troops to the assault with great galantry; but the steadiness of the British won the day; and after having received two slight wounds, he was driven back with the loss of 637 of his countrymen, and 200 of the Americans, killed and wounded. At the close of

---

What fleet appeared off Charleston in September?

Where had it been?

What number of ships did it consist of?

Describe the attack on Savannah.

What was the number of the French killed in this battle?

What of the Americans?

the engagement, D'Estaing retired to his ships, and departed from the coast, whilst Lincoln crossed the Savannah river, and returned with his forces, daily diminishing by desertion, to South Carolina. In proportion to the joy of the inhabitants of the southern States at the arrival of the French fleet, was their mortification at the failure of their joint endeavors to rid the provinces of an active enemy.—The brave were dispirited by defeat, and the sanguine began to despair of the fortunes of their country. Those, however, who thought more deeply, took comfort from the consideration that the enemy had effected little in the course of the campaign, excepting the overrunning and plundering of an extensive tract of territory, and that they had been compelled to terminate their excursions by again concentrating themselves in Savannah.

---

## SECTION XXIX.

SIEGE AND CAPITULATION OF CHARLESTON, 12TH OF MAY,  
1780.

The events which had occurred in South Carolina, having persuaded Sir Henry Clinton that the cause of independence was less firmly supported there than in the northern States, he determined to make that province the principal theater of the war during the ensuing campaign.—Leaving, therefore, the command of the royal army in New York to General Knyphausen, on the 26th of December 1779, he sailed from that city with a considerable force,

---

How were the inhabitants of the southern States affected by their bad success?  
From what source did others take comfort?

[cess.

Why did Sir Henry Clinton determine to make South Carolina the principal theater of the war?

At what time did he sail from New York?

and, after a stormy passage, on the 11th of the ensuing month, he arrived at Tybee, in Georgia, at the mouth of Savannah river. Hence he proceeded to Ashley river, and encamped opposite to Charleston. On his arrival, the assembly of the State of South Carolina broke up its sitting, after having once more delegated a dictatorial authority to Governor Rutledge, who immediately issued his orders for the assemblage of the militia. These commands were ill obeyed. The disasters of the last campaign had almost extinguished the flame of patriotism; and each man seemed to look to his neighbors for those exertions which might have justly been expected from himself. On reconnoitering the works of Charleston, however, Sir Henry Clinton did not think it expedient to attack them till he had received reinforcements from New York and Savannah, on the arrival of which he opened the siege in form. Charleston is situated on a tongue of land, bounded on the west by Ashley, and on the east by Cooper's rivers. The approach to Ashley river was defended by Fort Moultrie, erected on Sullivan's Island; and the passage up Cooper's river was impeded by a number of vessels, connected by cables and chains, and sunk in the channel opposite the town. On the land side, the place was defended by a citadel and strong lines, extending from one of the above mentioned rivers to the other. Before these lines, Clinton broke ground on the 29th of March, and on the 10th of April, he had completed his first parallel. On the preceding day, Admiral Arbuthnot, who commanded the British fleet, had passed Fort Moultrie with little loss, and had anchored near the town. About the 20th of April, the British commander

---

On his arrival what did the assembly of South Carolina do?

Where did he encamp?

How is Charleston situated? How was it defended?

Describe the proceedings of Clinton.

received a second reinforcement of 3000 men; and the place was soon completely invested by land and sea—his third parallel being advanced to the very edge of the American works. General Lincoln, who commanded in Charleston,\* would not have shut himself up in the town, had he

\* "General Lincoln, trusting to these defences, and expecting large re-enforcements, remained in Charleston at the earnest request of the inhabitants, and with the force under his command, amounting to 7000 men of all denominations under arms, resolved to defend the place. On the 21st of March, the British marine force, consisting of one ship of 50 guns, two of 40 guns, four of 32, and the Sandwich armed ship, crossed the bar, and anchored in Five Fathom Hole. Commodore Whipple, finding it impracticable to prevent the enemy from passing over the bar, fell back to Fort Moultrie, and afterward to Charleston. The crews and guns of all the vessels, excepting one, were put on shore to re-enforce the batteries. Some of his ships he stationed in Cooper river; and the rest, with some other vessels, were sunk across the mouth of it, to prevent the British fleet from entering. On the 9th of April, Admiral Arbuthnot passed Fort Moultrie without stopping to engage it. Colonel Pinckney, who commanded on Sullivan's Island with 300 men, kept up a brisk and well directed fire on the ships in their passage; 27 seamen were killed or wounded, and the ships in general sustained damage. As the fleet was precluded from an entrance into Cooper river, it anchored near the remains of Fort Johnston, just without the range of shot from the batteries of the town. The same day on which the fleet passed Fort Moultrie, the first parallel of the besiegers was finished. The town being now almost invested by sea and land, the British commanders summoned General Lincoln to surrender; but the General with modest firmness replied: "Sixty days have passed since it has been known that your intentions against this town were hostile, in which time has been afforded to abandon it: but duty and inclination point to the propriety of supporting it to the last extremity." The batteries of the first parallel were now opened upon the town, and soon made a visible impression; but the communication between the country and the garrison was still kept open across Cooper river, through which General Lincoln expected to receive his re-enforcements, and, if it should become necessary, to make good his retreat. To prevent the reception of those re-enforcements, and to cut off that retreat, Sir Henry Clinton detached Lieutenant Colonel Webster with 1400 men. By the advanced guard of this detachment, composed of Tarleton's legion and Ferguson's corps, the American cavalry, with the militia attached to them, were surprised in the night of the 14th of April, at Biggin's bridge, near Monk's Corner, 32 miles from Charleston, and completely routed and dispersed. The British now extended themselves to the eastward of Cooper river; and about this time Sir Henry Clinton received a re-

not confidently expected relief from the militia, who had been called out by Governor Rutledge, and by whose assistance he imagined that he could, if reduced to extremity, have effected a retreat, by crossing Cooper's river.—

enforcement of 3000 men from New York. The garrison having no reasonable hope of effecting a retreat, by advice of a council of war, called on the 21st of April, an offer was made for surrendering the town on certain conditions; but those conditions were instantly rejected by the British commanders. The besiegers in the mean time were daily advancing their works, and their third parallel was completed on the 6th of May. On the same day, the garrison of Fort Moultrie surrendered to Captain Hudson of the royal navy; Colonel Pinckney with 150 of the men under his command having been withdrawn from that post to Charleston. On the same day also, the broken remains of the American cavalry under Colonel White were again surprised by Lieutenant Colonel Tarleton on the banks of the Santee; and the whole either killed, taken or dispersed. Sir Henry Clinton, while thus successful in every operation, began a correspondence with General Lincoln, and renewed his former offers to the garrison, in case of their surrender; but the terms, so far as they respected the citizens, being not satisfactory, the garrison recommended hostilities. The British batteries of the third parallel now opened on the town, and did great execution. Shells and carcasses were thrown into almost all parts of the town; and several houses were burned. The Hessian yagers, posted advantageously, fired their rifles with such effect, that numbers of the besieged were killed at their guns; and scarcely any escaped, who showed themselves over the lines. During this fire, which continued two days without intermission, the besiegers gained the counterscarp of the work that flanked the canal; passed the canal itself; and, advancing within 25 yards of the American works, prepared to make a general assault by land and water. The siege having been protracted until the 11th, a great number of citizens of Charleston on that day addressed General Lincoln in a petition; requesting his acceptance of the terms which had been offered. The general wrote to Sir Henry Clinton, offering to accept those terms, and received a favorable answer. A capitulation was signed on the 12th of May; and the next day Major General Leslie took possession of the town.—The loss of the king's troops, during the siege, was 76 killed, and 140 wounded. The loss of the Americans was 89 killed, and 140 wounded. Upwards of 400 pieces of artillery were surrendered. By the articles of capitulation the garrison were to march out of town and to deposit their arms in front of the works: but the drums were not to beat a British march, nor the colors to be uncased. The continental troops and seamen were to keep their baggage, and remain prisoners

But the few, who, in this hour of difficulty, advanced to his aid, were cut off or kept in check; and the river was possessed by the enemy. In these distressful circumstances, after sustaining a bombardment which set the town on fire in different places, on the 12th of May, he surrendered on a capitulation, the principal terms of which were, that 'the militia were to be permitted to return to their respective homes, as prisoners on parole, and while they adhered to their parole, were not to be molested in person or property.' The same conditions were also imposed on all the inhabitants of the town, civil as well as military.

Sir Henry Clinton now addressed himself to the important work of re-establishing the royal authority in the province; as a preliminary step to which, on the 1st of June, he issued a proclamation, offering to the inhabitants at large, on condition of their submission, pardon for their past offences, a re-instatement in their rights, and, what was of the most weighty importance, exemption from taxation, except from their own legislature. This proclamation was followed up by the posting of garrisons in different parts of the country, to protect the loyal and to awe the disaffected, and by the march of 2000 men towards

of war until exchanged. The militia were to be permitted to return home as prisoners on parole; and, while they should adhere to their parole, were not to be molested by the British troops, in person or property. The inhabitants of all conditions were to be considered as prisoners on parole, and to hold their property on the same terms with the militia. The officers of the army and navy were to retain their servants, swords, pistols, and baggage unsearched. The number of persons who surrendered prisoners of war, inclusive of the militia and every adult male inhabitant, was above 5000; but the proper garrison did not exceed 2500. The number of privates in the continental army was 1977, of whom 500 were in the hospitals."

On what conditions was the town, &c. surrendered?

What was done on the 1st of June?

With what was this proclamation followed up?

North Carolina, on whose advance the American forces, who had tardily marched from that province to the relief of Charleston, retreated with loss. Thus crowned with success, Clinton, early in June, embarked, with the principal part of his forces, for New York, having delegated the completion of the subjugation of South Carolina to Lord Cornwallis, to whom he apportioned, for that purpose, an army of 4000 men.

---

### SECTION XXX.

#### DEFEAT OF GATES'S ARMY, BY LORD CORNWALLIS, 15TH OF AUGUST, 1780.

When Lord Cornwallis took the command in South Carolina, the insurgents had no army in the field within 400 miles of that province, and the great body of the inhabitants had submitted either as prisoners or as subjects; and had they been suffered to remain in this state of quiet neutrality, they would have been happy to abide in peace the issue of the contest in the northern States. But his Lordship's instructions did not permit him to be contented with this passive obedience, and he proceeded to take measures to compel the South Carolinians to take up arms against their countrymen. With this view, he issued a proclamation, absolving from their parole all the inhabitants who had bound themselves by that obligation, and restoring them 'to all the rights and *duties* belonging to citizens.' What

---

Where did Clinton go in June?

Under whose command did he leave the remaining forces?

At this time what was the situation of the American army in the southern States?

What did Lord Cornwallis proceed to compel the South Carolinians to do?  
With this view what did he do?

was meant by the ominous word 'duties' was explained by another part of the proclamation, whereby it was declared, 'that it was proper for all persons to take an active part in settling and securing his majesty's government,' and that 'whoever should neglect so to do should be treated as rebels.' The Carolinians were indignant at this violation of the terms of their submission. Many of them resumed their arms; and though more, under the impression of fear, enrolled themselves as subjects, they brought to the royal cause a hollow allegiance, which could not be trusted in the day of trial. A considerable number quitted the province, and hastened to join the army which congress was raising for the purpose of wresting it out of the hands of the enemy.

In organizing this force, congress had to struggle with the greatest difficulties. Their treasury was exhausted, and they were at this time occupied in making an equitable adjustment as to their paper money, on the strength of which they had undertaken the war, and which was now depreciated to the amount, of forty for one—that is, one silver dollar was worth forty American paper dollars. Whilst their currency was in this state they were perpetually embarrassed in their purchases of arms, clothing, and stores; and when they had raised the men for the southern army, some time elapsed before they could procure the necessary funds to put them in motion. These difficulties being at length overcome, the Maryland and Delaware troops were sent forward, and began their march in high spirits on learning that the expedition, of which they formed a part, was to be commanded by General Gates. The hero of

---

What was meant by the word "*duties*"?

What effect had this proceeding on the Carolinians?

What were the difficulties with which congress had to struggle?

What troops were sent forward? Under whose command?

Saratoga, on joining the army in North Carolina, was advised to proceed to the southward by a circuitous rout, where he would find plenty of provisions; but, conceiving it to be his duty to hasten with all speed to the scene of action, he preferred the straight forward road to Camden, which led through a desert pine barren. In traversing this dreary tract of country, his forces were worn out with fatigue and extenuated with hunger. The few cattle which his commissariat had provided having been consumed, his only resource for meat was the lean beasts which were accidentally picked up in the woods. Meal and grain were also very scarce; and as substitutes for bread, the soldiers were obliged to have recourse to the green corn and to the fruits which they met with on their line of march. The consequence of this unwonted diet was, that the army was thinned by dysentery and other diseases usually caused by the heat of the weather and by unwholesome food. The soldiers at first bore these hardships with impatience, and symptoms of dissatisfaction and even of mutiny began to appear amongst them. But by the conciliatory exertions of the officers, who shared in all the privations of the common men, the spirit of murmuring was repressed, and the troops pursued their weary way with patience and even with cheerfulness. On their arrival at a place called Deep Creek, their distresses were alleviated by a supply of good beef accompanied by the distribution of half a pound of Indian corn meal to each man. Invigorated by this welcome refreshment, they proceeded to the cross-roads, where they were joined by a respectable body of militia under the command of General Caswell. Though Gates was aware that

---

What hardships had they to encounter?

How was the spirit of mutiny suppressed?

How were they relieved at Deep creek?

By whom were they joined at Cross-roads?

another body of militia were hastening to his assistance from the State of Virginia, he was prevented from waiting for their arrival by want of provisions, and, after staying for one day only at the cross-roads, finding that the enemy intended to dispute his passage by Linch's creek, he marched to the right towards Clermont, where the British had established a defensible post. On his approach to the latter place, however, Lord Rawdon, who commanded the advance of the British, concentrated all his forces at Camden, whilst Gates mustered the whole of his army at Clermont, which is distant from Camden about thirteen miles.

These events occurred on the 13th of August, and on the next day the American troops were reinforced by a body of 700 of the Virginia militia. At the same time Gates received an express from Colonel Sumpter, who reported to him that he had been joined by a number of the South Carolina militia, at his encampment on the west side of the Wateree, and that an escort of clothing, ammunition, and other stores, was on its way from Charleston to Camden, and must, of necessity, on its way to its destination, cross the Wateree at a ferry about a mile from that place. On receiving this intelligence, Gates sent forward a detachment of the Maryland line, consisting of 100 regular infantry and a company of artillery, with two brass field-pieces, and 300 North Carolina militia, all under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Woodford, who was instructed to join General Sumpter, and assist him in intercepting the convoy. At the same time General Gates made preparations for advancing still nearer Camden, in the expectation that

---

Why did not Gates wait for the Virginia militia?

What events occurred on 13th of August?

What information did Gates receive by express?

What then did he do?

What preparations did he then make?

if Lord Rawdon did not abandon that post as he had done that of Clermont, his supplies would be cut off by the bodies of militia which were expected to pour forth from the upper counties, and he would thus be compelled to a surrender. On reaching the frontier of South Carolina, Gates had issued a proclamation, inviting the inhabitants to join his standard, and offering an amnesty to such of them as, under the pressure of circumstances, had promised allegiance to the British Government. Though this proclamation had not been without effect, it had not called forth the numbers upon which the American General had been led to calculate; and, after the departure of Lieutenant-Colonel Woodford's detachment, the abstract of the field-returns submitted to him by his deputy Adjutant-General indicated no more than between 4000 or 5000 men as constituting his disposable force. Gates, disappointed as he was by the scantiness of these returns, determined to persevere in his plan of offensive operations, and marched about ten at night on the 15th of August to within half a mile of Sander's Creek, about half way between his encampment and Camden. Lord Cornwallis, who the day before had repaired to his head-quarters at Camden, and had taken the command of the British army, was also resolved, though his forces amounted only to 2000 men, of whom 1700 were infantry and 300 cavalry, to attack the enemy in their camp, and advancing for that purpose, at half-past two in the morning, encountered their advanced parties near Sander's Creek. Here some firing took place with various success; but on the whole the British had the advantage in this night

---

What did Gen. Gates issue?

What were its effects?

What was Gates' whole force at this time?

What that of Cornwallis?

What produced an encounter?

renounter. Early the ensuing morning both armies prepared for battle. On the side of the Americans, the second Maryland brigade, under the command of General Gist, occupied the right, which was flanked by a morass; the Virginia militia and the North Carolina infantry, also covered by some boggy ground, were posted on the left, whilst General Caswell, with the North Carolina division and the artillery, appeared in the center. A *corps de reserve*, under the orders of General Smallwood, was posted about three hundred yards in the rear of the American line.

In arranging the British forces Lord Cornwallis delegated the command of the right to Lieutenant-Colonel Webster, who had at his disposal the 23d and the 33d regiments of foot. The left was guarded by some Irish volunteers, the infantry of the legion, and part of Lieutenant-Colonel Hamilton's North Carolina regiment, under the command of Lord Rawdon. The cavalry of the legion was stationed in the rear, where also the 71st regiment was stationed as a reserve. The respective armies being thus disposed, the action began by the advance of 200 of the British in front of the American artillery, which received them with a steady fire. Gates then commanded the Virginia militia to advance under the command of Colonel Stevens, who cheerfully obeyed the orders of his commander-in-chief, and, when he had led his men within firing distance, urged them to charge the enemy with their bayonets. This portion of the American army did not, however, emulate the gallantry of their leader. Lord Cornwallis, observing their movement, gave orders to Lieutenant-Colonel Webster to attack them. The British in-

---

How was the American army arranged for battle?

How the British?

Describe the battle?

fantry obeyed his lordship's commands with a loud cheer. The American militia, intimidated by this indication of determined daring, were panic-struck, and the Virginians and the Carolinians threw down their arms and hastened from the field. The right wing and the *corps de reserve*, however, maintained their position, and even gained ground upon the enemy; but Lord Cornwallis, taking advantage of a favorable moment, charged them with his cavalry, and put them completely to the rout. The victors captured the whole of the baggage and artillery of the Americans, who were pursued by the British cavalry for the space of twenty miles; and so complete was their discomfiture, that on the second day after the engagement Gates could only muster 150 of his fugitive soldiers at Charleston, a town in the south of North Carolina, from whence he retreated still farther north to Salisbury, and thence to Hillsborough. The sickliness of the season prevented Lord Cornwallis from pursuing the broken remains of the enemy's army; but he employed the leisure now afforded him in inflicting vengeance on such of the inhabitants of South Carolina as had been induced, by the presence of Gates's army, to declare in his favor. The militiamen who had joined the republican standard, and had fallen into his hands as prisoners, he doomed to the gallows. The property of the fugitives, and of the declared friends of independence, he confiscated. These acts, though severe, were perhaps justifiable by the strictness of the law. But neither in law nor in honor could his lordship justify the seizure of a number of the principal citizens of Charleston, and most of the military officers residing there under the faith of the late capitulation, and sending them to St. Augustin.

Reduced to desperation by these injudicious severities,

the bold and active among the disaffected formed themselves into independent bands, under different chieftains, amongst whom Marion and Sumpter were distinguished by their spirit of enterprise. These harassed the scattered parties of the British, several of which they cut off; and by their movements the loyalists to the north of the Carolinas were kept in check. Eight of these chieftains having under their forces, attacked Major Ferguson, who had been sent to the confines of the two provinces to assemble the friends of the British government, and killed or wounded 250 of his new levies, and took 300 prisoners, Ferguson himself being amongst the slain. This success was followed by important results: Lord Cornwallis had marched into North Carolina, in the direction of Salisbury; but when he heard of the defeat and death of Ferguson, he retreated to Winnsborough in the southern province, being severely harassed in his retrograde movement by the militia and the inhabitants; and when he retired into winter-quarters Sumpter still kept the field.

In the mean time General Gates had collected another army, with which he advanced to Charlotte. Here he received intelligence that Congress had resolved to supersede him and to submit his conduct to a court of inquiry. Mortified as he was by the ingratitude of his country, on the notification of this resolve of the supreme power he dutifully resigned his command. But on his way home from Carolina, his feelings were soothed by an address from the legislature of Virginia assuring him that 'the remembrance

---

In consequence of these proceedings what did the more bold and active do?

How did these bands employ themselves?

What did eight of these chieftains?

What other results followed?

In the mean time what did Gen. Gates do?

What intelligence afterwards arrived?

How were his feelings soothed?

of his former glorious services could not be obliterated by any reverse of fortune.'

---

### SECTION XXXI.

#### ARRIVAL OF THE FRENCH AUXILIARIES UNDER ROCHAMBEAU, 10TH OF JULY, 1780.

Whilst these events were occurring in the southern States, General Washington was obliged to confine himself to the irksome and inglorious task of watching, from his encampment at Morristown, the motions of the British on New York Island, and of restraining their incursions into the adjacent country. Though the army opposed to him was lessened by the detachment which Sir Henry Clinton led into South Carolina, his own forces were proportionably weakened by the reinforcements which it was necessary for him to send to the American army in the same quarter; and never did distress press more heavily upon him. The depreciation of the currency was at that time so great, that four months' pay of a private would not purchase a single bushel of wheat. His camp was sometimes destitute of meat, and sometimes of bread. As each State provided for its own quota of troops, no uniformity could be established in the distribution of provisions. This circumstance aggravated the general discontent, and a spirit of mutiny began to display itself in two of the Connecticut regiments, which were with difficulty restrained from forcing their way home at the point of the bayonet. Of these discontents the enemy endeavored to take advan-

---

While these events were occurring, what was Gen. Washington obliged to do?

What were some of Washington's distresses?

Why did the spirit of mutiny appear in Washington's army?

tage, by circulating in the American camp proclamations offering the most tempting gratifications to such of the continental troops as should desert the republican colors and embrace the royal cause. But these offers were unavailing; mutinous as they were, the malcontents abhorred the thought of joining the enemies of their country; and on the seasonable arrival of a fresh supply of provisions, they cheerfully returned to their duty. Soon after this, when General Knyphausen, who commanded the British forces in the absence of Sir Henry Clinton, made an irruption into Jersey, on the 16th of June, the whole American army marched out to oppose him; and though he was reinforced by Sir Henry Clinton, who during this expedition had arrived from Charleston, he was compelled to measure back his steps. Both the advance and retreat of the German were marked by the devastation committed by his troops, who burnt the town of Springfield, and most of the houses on their line of march.

Alarmed by the representations made by General Washington, of the destitute condition of his army, congress sent three members of their body with instructions to inquire into the condition of their forces, and with authority to reform abuses. These gentlemen fully verified the statements of the commander-in-chief. No sooner was this fact known in the city of Philadelphia, than a subscription was set on foot for the relief of the suffering soldiers, which soon amounted to 300,000 dollars. This sum was intrusted to the discretion of a well chosen committee, who ap-

---

How did the enemy endeavor to take advantage of these discontents?

How was order restored?

What town was burnt? By whom?

What occurred soon after this?

What did Congress do?

Whence did the army receive \$300,000?

propriated it to the purchase of provisions for the troops. The three commissioners also applied themselves diligently to the task of recruiting and re-organizing the army. They prescribed to each State the quota of forces which it was to contribute towards the raising of 35,000 men, their deficiency in regulars being to be supplied by drafts from their respective militia. The States of New England, Pennsylvania and Virginia, promptly listened to the call of their country, and made extraordinary efforts to furnish their several quotas of recruits. The other members of the Union exerted themselves to the best of their ability; and though the general result of these exertions did not produce the number of troops which was deemed requisite for the public service, more could not, in such circumstances, have been well expected.

The congress were the more earnest in their wishes to put their army on a respectable footing, as they were in expectation of the arrival of a body of auxiliary forces from France. This welcome aid appeared off Rhode Island on the 10th of July, 1780, on which day, Monsieur Ternay sailed into the harbor of Newport with a squadron of seven sail of the line, five frigates, and five schooners, convoying a fleet of transports, having on board 6000 men, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. Admiral Arbuthnot, who had under his command, at New York, only four sail of the line, on hearing of the arrival of the French at Rhode Island, was apprehensive of being attacked by their superior force. But he was soon relieved from

---

What exertions were made?

What did they prescribe to each state?

What States listened promptly to the call?

What was the general result?

Of what did the aid from France consist?

What Port did the squadron enter?

his fears by the vigilance of the British ministry, who, on the sailing of the French fleet from Europe, had sent to his assistance Admiral Graves, with six ships of the line. On receiving this reinforcement, he sailed for Rhode Island, for the purpose of encountering the French squadron, whilst Sir Henry Clinton proceeded with 8000 men to the north of Long Island, for the purpose of landing on the opposite part of the continent, and attacking their land forces. But the British Admiral found the enemy's ships so well secured by batteries and other land fortifications, that he was obliged to content himself with blocking them up in their harbor; and Clinton, receiving intelligence that General Washington was preparing to take advantage of his absence by making an attack upon New York, hastened back to the relief of that place.

---

## SECTION XXXII.

### TREASON OF ARNOLD, AND DEATH OF ANDRE.

Washington, on the retreat of General Clinton, withdrew to West Point, an almost impregnable position, situated about fifty miles to the northward of New York, on the Hudson river, by means of which he kept up a communication between the eastern and southern States; and having occasion, towards the end of the month of September, to go to Rhode Island to hold a conference with the French Admiral and Count Rochambeau, he left the command of this important post to General Arnold, unconscious that in

What British forces soon after arrived?

What service did the British fleet perform?

Why did Gen. Clinton return to New York?

Where did Washington withdraw to?

Where, and what is West Point?

To whom did he intrust its command?

so doing, he intrusted the fortunes of the infant republic to a traitor. Arnold was brave and hardy, but dissipated and profligate. Extravagant in his expenses, he had involved himself in debts, and having had, on frequent occasions, the administration of considerable sums of public money, his accounts were so unsatisfactory, that he was liable to an impeachment on charges of peculation. Much had been forgiven indeed, and more would probably have been forgiven to his valor and military skill. But alarmed by the terrors of a guilty conscience, he determined to get rid of pecuniary responsibility, by betraying his country; and accordingly entered into a negotiation with Sir Henry Clinton, in which he engaged, when a proper opportunity should present itself, to make such a disposition of his troops as would enable the British to make themselves masters of West Point. The details of this negotiation were conducted by Major Andre, the Adjutant-General of the British army, with whom Arnold carried on a clandestine correspondence, addressing him under the name of Anderson, whilst he himself assumed that of Gustavus. To facilitate their communications, the Vulture sloop of war was moved near to West Point, and the absence of Washington seemed to present a fit opportunity for the final arrangement of their plans, on the night of the 21st of September, Arnold sent a boat to the Vulture to bring Andre on shore. That officer landed in his uniform between the posts of the two armies, and was met by Arnold, with whom

---

What was his character?

What was his pecuniary situation?

What did he determine on?

To whom did Clinton entrust the details of the negotiation?

Under what name did they carry on the correspondence?

What circumstances facilitated their plans?

When were those plans finally arranged?

he held a conference which lasted till day-break, when it was too late for him to return to the vessel. In this extremity, unfortunately for himself, he allowed Arnold to conduct him within one of the American posts, where he lay concealed till the next night. In the meantime, the Vulture, having been incommoded by an American battery, had moved lower down the river, and the boatmen now refused to convey the stranger on board her. Being cut off from this way of escape, Andre was advised to make for New York by land; and, for this purpose, he was furnished with a disguise, and a passport signed by Arnold, designating him as John Anderson. He had advanced in safety near the British lines, when he was stopped by three New York militia-men. Instead of showing his pass to these scouts, he asked them 'where they belonged to?' and, on their answering 'to below,' meaning to New York, with singular want of judgment, he stated that he was a British officer, and begged them to let him proceed without delay. The men, now throwing off the mask, seized him; and, notwithstanding his offers of a considerable bribe if they would release him, they proceeded to search him, and found upon his person, papers which gave fatal evidence of his own culpability and of Arnold's treachery. These papers were in Arnold's hand-writing, and contained exact and detailed returns of the state of the forces, ordnance, and defences of West Point and its dependencies, with the artillery orders, critical remarks on the works, an estimate of the number of men that were ordinarily on duty to man them, and the copy of a state of matters that had, on the sixth of the month, been laid before a council of war by

---

Why did not Andre return to the Vulture?

On his return to N. Y. by land, how was he disguised?

Describe the circumstances of his seizure?

What did the papers found on him contain?

the commander-in-chief. When Andre was conducted by his captors to the quarters of the commander of the scouting parties, still assuming the name of Anderson, he requested permission to write to Arnold, to inform him of his detention. This request was inconsiderately granted; and the traitor, being thus apprised of his peril, instantly made his escape. At this moment, Washington arriving at West Point, was made acquainted with the whole affair. Having taken the necessary precautions for the security of his post, he referred the case of the prisoner to a court-martial, consisting of fourteen general officers. Before this tribunal, Andre appeared with steady composure of mind. He voluntarily confessed all the facts of his case. Being interrogated by the board with respect to his conception of his coming on shore under the sanction of a flag, he ingenuously replied, that 'if he had landed under that protection, he might have returned under it.' The court, having taken all the circumstances of his case into consideration, unanimously concurred in opinion, 'that he ought to be considered as a spy; and that, agreeably to the laws and usages of nations, he ought to suffer death.' Sir Henry Clinton, first by amicable negotiation, and afterwards by threats, endeavored to induce the American commander to spare the life of his friend; but Washington did not think this act of mercy compatible with his duty to his country, and Andre was ordered for execution. He had petitioned to be allowed to die a soldier's death; but this request could not be granted. Of this circumstance, however, he was kept in ignorance, till he saw the preparations for his

---

How was Arnold apprised of his peril?

To whom did Washington refer the case?

How did Andre behave during the trial?

What was the decision of the court?

What attempts did Sir Henry Clinton make to have the life of Andre spared?

final catastrophe, when finding that the bitterness of his destiny was not to be alleviated as he wished, he exclaimed, 'It is but a momentary pang!' and calmly submitted to his fate.

Soon after this sad occurrence, Washington, in writing to a friend, expressed himself in the following terms:— 'Andre has met his fate, and with that fortitude which was to be expected from an accomplished gentleman and a gallant officer; but I am mistaken if Arnold is not undergoing, at this time, the torments of a mental hell.\* Whatever might be the feelings of the traitor, his treason had its reward. He was immediately appointed Brigadier-General in the service of the King of Great Britain; and, on his promotion, he had the folly and presumption to publish an address, in which he avowed, that, being dissatisfied with the alliance between the United States and France, 'he had retained his arms and command for an opportunity to surrender them to Great Britain.' This address was exceeded in meanness and insolence by another, in which he invited his late companions in arms to follow his example. The American soldiers read these manifestos with scorn; and so odious did the character of a traitor, as exemplified

\* "Arnold received, as the reward of his treachery, the sum of 10,000 pounds, and the rank of brigadier general in the British army. But he was deserted by his new associates, and his name will be forever synonymous with infamy and baseness. In contrast with his, how bright shines the fame of the three captors of Andre." \* \* \* \* \*

"Congress resolved, that each of the three captors of Andre, John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Vert, should receive annually \$200 in specie during life; and that the board of war be directed to procure for each of them a silver medal, emblematic of their fidelity and patriotism, to be presented by the commander-in-chief, with the thanks of congress."

What petition did Andre himself make?

How did he meet his fate?

How did Washington express himself to a friend after the death of Andre?

How was Arnold rewarded?

in the conduct of Arnold, become in their estimation, that 'desertion totally ceased amongst them at this remarkable period of the war.'\*

Circumstances, however, took place soon after the discovery of Arnold's treachery, which led that renegade to entertain delusive hopes that the army of Washington would disband itself. The Pennsylvanian troops now serving on the Hudson, had been enlisted on the ambiguous terms of 'serving three years, or during the continuance of the war.' As the three years from the date of their enrollment were expired, they claimed their discharge, which was refused by their officers, who maintained that the option of the two above-mentioned conditions rested with the State. Wearied out with privations, and indignant at what they deemed an attempt to impose upon them, the soldiers flew to arms, deposed their officers, and under the guidance of others whom they elected in their place, they quitted Morristown and marched to Princeton. Here they were solicited by the most tempting offers on the part of some emissaries sent to them by Sir Henry Clinton, to put themselves under the protection of the British government. But they were so far from listening to these overtures, that they arrested Sir Henry's agents, and, their grievances having been redressed by the interposition of a committee of congress, they returned to their duty, and the British spies, having been tried by a board of officers, were condemned to death and executed.†

\* Ramsay.

† "The soldiers of the Pennsylvania line were stationed at Morristown, in New Jersey. They complained that, in addition to sustaining sufferings com-

---

Why did desertion totally cease at this period?

What circumstances took place soon after?

Describe the particulars.

How did these soldiers receive the offers of Sir Henry Clinton?

Who were condemned to death and executed?

A similar revolt of a small body of the Jersey line was quelled by the capital punishment of two of the ring-leaders of the mutineers. The distresses which were the chief cause of this misconduct of the American soldiery, were principally occasioned by the depreciation of the continental currency; which evil, at this period, effected its own cure, as the depreciated paper was by common consent, and without any act of the legislature, put out of use; and by a seasonable loan from France, and by the revival of trade with the French and Spanish West Indies, its place was speedily supplied with hard money.

men to all, they were retained in service contrary to the terms of their enlistments. In the night of the first of January, thirteen hundred, on a concerted signal, paraded under arms, and declared their intention of marching to Philadelphia, and demanding of congress a redress of their grievances. The officers strove to compel them to relinquish their purpose. In the attempt, one was killed and several were wounded. General Wayne presented his pistols as if intending to fire. They held their bayonets to his breast; "We love and respect you," said they, "but if you fire you are a dead man. We are not going to the enemy. On the contrary, if they were now to come out, you should see us fight under your orders with as much alacrity as ever. But we will be amused no longer; we are determined to obtain what is our just due." They elected temporary officers, and moved off in a body towards Princeton. General Wayne, to prevent them from plundering the inhabitants, forwarded provisions for their use. The next day he followed, and requested them to appoint a man from each regiment, to state to him their complaints. The men were appointed, a conference held, but he refused to comply with their demands. They proceeded in good order to Princeton. Three emissaries from Sir Henry Clinton meeting them here, made them liberal offers to entice them from the service of congress. The offers were instantly rejected, and the emissaries seized and confined in strict custody. Here they were also met by a committee of congress, and a deputation from the State of Pennsylvania. The latter, granting a part of their demands, persuaded them to return to their duty. The agents of Clinton were then given up, and immediately executed as spies."

---

What happened in the Jersey line?

What was the chief cause of these mutinies?

How did the evil cure itself?

How was hard money obtained?

Lately John Champe, sergeant-major of the legion of cavalry, who had been for several months considered by the corps as a deserter, returned. This high-minded soldier had been selected to undertake a very difficult and perilous project, the narration of which is due to his merit, as well as to the singularity of his progress.

The treason of Brigadier Arnold--the capture of Andre—with intelligence received by Washington, through his confidential agents in New York, communicating that many of his officers, and especially a major general named to him, were connected with Arnold—could not fail to seize the attention of a commander even less diligent and zealous than Washington. It engrossed his mind entirely, exciting reflections the most anxious as well as unpleasant.

To Major Lee, afterwards Lieutenant Colonel of the legion of cavalry, for whom he had sent, he said, 'I have sent for you, in the expectation that you have in your corps individuals capable and willing to undertake an indispensable, delicate, and hazardous project. Whoever comes forward upon this occasion, will lay me under great obligations personally, and in behalf of the United States I will reward him amply. No time is to be lost; he must proceed, if possible, this night. My object is to probe to the bottom the afflicting intelligence contained in the papers you have just read; to seize Arnold, and by getting him, to save Andre. They are all connected. While my emissary is engaged in preparing means for the seizure of Arnold, the guilt of others can be traced; and the timely delivery of Arnold to me, will possibly put it into my power to restore the amiable and unfortunate Andre to his friends.

---

Who returned at this time?

What had he been selected for?

What engrossed Washington's mind?

What did Washington say to Major Lee?

My instructions are ready, in which you will find my express orders that Arnold is not to be hurt; but that he be permitted to escape if to be prevented only by killing him, as his public punishment is the sole object in view. This you cannot too forcibly press upon whomsoever may engage in the enterprise; and this fail not to do. With my instructions are two letters, to be delivered as ordered, and here are some guineas for expenses.'

Major Lee replying, said he had little or no doubt but that his legion contained many individuals daring enough for any operation, however perilous; but that the one in view required a combination of qualities not easily to be found unless in a commissioned officer, to whom he could not venture to propose an enterprise, the first step to which was desertion. That though the sergeant-major of the cavalry was in all respects qualified for the delicate and adventurous project, and to him it might be proposed without indelicacy, as his station did not interpose the obstacle before stated; yet it was very probable that the same difficulty would occur in his breast, to remove which would not be easy, if practicable.

Washington was highly pleased at finding that a non-commissioned officer was deemed capable of executing his views; as he felt extreme difficulty in authorising an invitation to officers, who generally are, and always ought to be, scrupulous and nice in adhering to the course of honor. He asked the name, the country, the age, the size, length of service, and character of the sergeant.

Being told his name—that he was a native of Loudon county, in Virginia; about twenty-three or twenty-four years of age—that he had enlisted in 1776—rather above

---

What was the reply?

How did Washington receive this reply?      Why?

What was he told?

the common size—full of bone and muscle; with a saturnine countenance, grave, thoughtful, and taciturn—of tried courage, and inflexible perseverance, and as likely to reject an overture coupled with ignominy as any officer in the corps; a commission being the goal of his long and anxious exertions, and certain on the first vacancy;—the general exclaimed, that he was the very man for the business; that he must undertake it; and that going to the enemy by the instigation and at the request of his officer, was not desertion, although it appeared to be so. And he enjoined that this explanation, as coming from him, should be pressed on Champe; and that the vast good in prospect should be contrasted with the mere semblance of doing wrong, which he presumed could not fail to conquer every scruple. Major Lee sending instantly for the sergeant-major, introduced the business in the way best calculated, as he thought, to produce his concurrence. Observing that the chance of detection became extremely narrow, and consequently that of success enlarged. That by succeeding in the safe delivery of Arnold, he not only gratified his general in the most acceptable manner, but he would be hailed as the avenger of the reputation of the army, stained by foul and wicked perfidy; and what could not but be highly pleasing, he would be the instrument of saving the life of Major Andre, soon to be brought before a court of inquiry, the decision of which could not be doubted, from the universally known circumstances of the case, and had been anticipated in the general's instructions. That, by investigating with diligence and accuracy the intelligence communicated to him, he would bring to light new guilt, or he would relieve innocence, (as was most probable) from distrust; quieting

---

What did the general exclaim?

What did he enjoin?

What did the major observe as he introduced the business to Champe?

the torturing suspicions which now harrowed the mind of Washington, and restoring again to his confidence a once honored general, possessing it at present only ostensibly, as well as hush doubts affecting many of his brother soldiers.

This discourse was followed by a detail of the plan, with a wish that he would enter upon its execution instantly.—Champe listened with deep attention, and with a highly excited countenance; the perturbations of his breast not being hid even by his dark visage. He briefly and modestly replied, that no soldier exceeded him in respect and affection for the commander-in-chief, to serve whom he would willingly lay down his life; and that he was sensible of the honor conferred by the choice of him for the execution of a project all over arduous; nor could he be at a loss to know to whom was to be ascribed the preference bestowed, which he took pleasure in acknowledging, although increasing obligations before great and many.

He was not, he said, deterred by the danger and difficulty which was evidently to be encountered, but he was deterred by the ignominy of desertion, to be followed by the hypocrisy of enlisting with the enemy; neither of which comported with his feelings, and either placed an insuperable bar in his way to promotion.

He concluded by observing, that if any mode could be contrived free from disgrace, he would cordially embark in the enterprise. As it was, he prayed to be excused; and hoped that services, always the best in his power to perform, faithfully performed, entitled his prayer to success.

Major Lee entreated the sergeant to ask himself what must be the reflections of his comrades, if a soldier from

---

By what was this discourse followed?

What reply did Champe make?

How did he conclude?

some other corps should execute the attempt, when they should be told that the glory transferred to the regiment of which he was one, might have been enjoyed by the legion, had not Sergeant Champe shrunk from the overture made to him by his general, rather than reject scruples too narrow and confined to be permitted to interfere with grand and virtuous deeds. The *esprit du corps* could not be resisted; united to his inclination, it subdued his prejudices, and he declared his willingness to conform to the wishes of the general; relying, as he confidently did, that his reputation would be protected by those who had induced him to undertake the enterprise, should he be unfortunate.

The instructions were read to him, and each distinct object presented plainly to his view, of which he took notes so disguised as to be understood only by himself. He was particularly cautioned to use the utmost circumspection in delivering his letters, and to take care to withhold from the two individuals, addressed under feigned names, knowledge of each other; for although both had long been in the confidence of the general, yet it was not known by either that the other was so engaged.

He was further urged, to bear in constant recollection the solemn injunction so pointedly expressed in the instructions to Major Lee, of forbearing to kill Arnold in any condition of things.

This part of the business being finished, their deliberation was turned to the manner of Champe's desertion; for it was well known to them both that to pass the numerous patroles of horse and foot crossing from the stationary

---

What did the major say by way of entreaty?

What was the effect of this appeal?

What were his instructions?

What was further urged?

Describe the difficulties which were in the way of Champe.

guards, was itself difficult, which was now rendered more so by parties thrown occasionally beyond the place called Liberty Pole, as well as by swarms of irregulars, induced sometimes to venture down to the very point at Powles-Hook, with the hope of picking up booty. Evidently discernible as were the difficulties in the way, no relief could be administered by Major Lee, lest it might induce a belief that he was privy to the desertion, which opinion getting to the enemy would involve the life of Champe. The sergeant was left to his own resources and to his own management, with the declared determination, that in case his departure should be discovered before morning, Lee would take care to delay pursuit as long as practicable.

Giving to the sergeant three guineas, and presenting his best wishes, he recommended him to start without delay, and enjoined him to communicate his arrival in New York as soon as he could. Champe pulling out his watch, compared it with the major's, reminding the latter of the importance of holding back pursuit, which he was convinced would take place in the course of the night, and which might be fatal, as he knew that he should be obliged to zigzag in order to avoid the patroles, which would consume time. It was now nearly eleven. The sergeant returned to camp, and taking his cloak, valise and orderly book, he drew his horse from the picket, and mounting him put himself upon fortune.

Within half an hour Captain Carnes, officer of the day, waited upon the major, and with considerable emotion told him that one of the patrole had fallen in with a dragoon, who, being challenged, put spur to his horse and escaped, though instantly pursued. Lee complaining of the interruption, and pretending to be extremely fatigued by his

---

To what was he left?

Describe his departure and course.

What information did Captain Carnes bring to Major Lee?

ride to and from head-quarters, answered as if he did not understand what had been said, which compelled the captain to repeat it. Who can the fellow that was pursued be? inquired the major; adding, a countryman, probably. No, replied the captain, the patrole sufficiently distinguished him to know that he was a dragoon: probably one from the army, if not, certainly one of our own. This idea was ridiculed from its improbability, as during the whole war but a single dragoon had deserted from the legion. This did not convince Carnes, so much stress was it now the fashion to lay on the desertion of Arnold, and the probable effect of his example. The captain withdrew to examine the squadron of horse, whom he had ordered to assemble in pursuance of established usage on similar occasions. Very quickly he returned, stating that the scoundrel was known, and was no less a person than the sergeant-major, who had gone off with his horse, baggage, arms and orderly book—as neither the one nor the other could be found.—Sensibly affected at the supposed baseness of a soldier extremely respected, the captain added that he had ordered a party to make ready for pursuit, and begged the major's written orders.

Occasionally this discourse was interrupted, and every idea suggested which the excellent character of the sergeant warranted, to induce the suspicion that he had not deserted, but had taken the liberty to leave camp with a view to personal pleasure; an example, too often set by the officers themselves, destructive as it was of discipline, opposed as it was to orders, and disastrous as it might prove to the corps in the course of service.

---

How did Lee manage with Capt. Carnes?

How were these suggestions received by the captain?

What did he then do?

On return to the major, what did the captain say?

For what purpose was the discourse interrupted?

Some little delay was thus interposed; but it being now announced that the pursuing party was ready, Major Lee directed a change in the officer, saying that he had a particular service in view, which he had determined to intrust to the lieutenant ready for duty, and which, probably, must be performed in the morning. He therefore directed him to summon cornet Middleton for the present command.—Major Lee was induced thus to act, first to add to the delay, and next from his knowledge of the tenderness of Middleton's disposition, which he hoped would lead to the protection of Champe, should he be taken. Within ten minutes Middleton appeared to receive his orders, which were delivered to him made out in the customary form, and signed by the major. 'Pursue so far as you can with safety sergeant Champe, who is suspected of deserting to the enemy, and has taken the road leading to Powles-Hook. Bring him alive, that he may suffer in the presence of the army; but kill him if he resists, or escapes after being taken.'

Detaining the cornet a few minutes longer in advising him what course to pursue—urging him to take care of the horse and accoutrements, if recovered—and enjoining him to be on his guard, lest he might, by his eager pursuit, improvidently fall into the hands of the enemy—the major dismissed Middleton, wishing him success. A shower of rain fell soon after Champe's departure, which enabled the pursuing dragoons to take the trail of his horse; knowing, as officer and trooper did, the make of their shoes, the impression of which, was an unerring guide.\*

\* The horses being all shod by our own farriers, the shoes were made in the same form; which, with a private mark annexed to the fore shoes, and known

---

Who was sent in pursuit of Champe?

What instructions were given to him?

What enabled them to pursue Champe's rout?

When Middleton departed, it was a few minutes past twelve; so that Champe had only the start of rather more than an hour—by no means as long as was desired. The pursuing party during the night, was, on their part, delayed by the necessary halts to examine occasionally the road, as the impression of the horse's shoes directed their course; this was unfortunately too evident, no other horse having passed along the road since the shower. When the day broke, Middleton was no longer forced to halt, and he pressed on with rapidity. Ascending an eminence before he reached the Three Piggins, some miles on the north of the village of Bergen, as the pursuing party reached its summit, Champe was descried not more than half a mile in front. Resembling an Indian in his vigilance, the sergeant at the same moment discovered the party, to whose object he was no stranger, and giving spur to his horse, he determined to outstrip his pursuers. Middleton at the same instant put his horses to the top of their speed; and being, as the legion all were, well acquainted with the country, he recollects a short rout through the woods to the bridge below Bergen, which diverged from the great road just after you gain the Three Piggins. Reaching the point of separation, he halted; and dividing his party, directed a sergeant with a few dragoons to take the near cut, and possess with all possible despatch the bridge, while he with the residue followed Champe; not doubting but that Champe must deliver himself up, as he would be closed between himself and his sergeant. Champe did not forget

to the troopers, pointed out the trail of our dragoons to each other, which was often very useful.

---

How long had he had the start of his pursuers?

Where did the parties discover each other?

What course did Middleton now adopt?

the short cut, and would have taken it himself, but he knew it was the usual rout of our parties when returning in the day from the neighborhood of the enemy, properly preferring the woods to the road. He consequently avoided it; and persuaded that Middleton would avail himself of it, wisely resolved to relinquish his intention of getting to Powles-Hook, and to seek refuge from two British galleys, lying a few miles to the west of Bergen.

This was a station always occupied by one or two galleys, and which it was known now lay there. Entering the village of Bergen, Champe turned to his right, and disguising his change of course as much as he could by taking the beaten streets, turning as they turned, he passed through the village and took the road towards Elizabeth-town Point. Middleton's sergeant gained the bridge, where he concealed himself, ready to pounce upon Champe when he came up; and Middleton pursuing his course through Bergen, soon got also to the bridge, when, to his extreme mortification, he found that the sergeant had slipped through his fingers. Returning up the road, he inquired of the villagers of Bergen, whether a dragoon had been seen that morning ahead of his party. He was answered in the affirmative, but could learn nothing satisfactorily as to the rout he took. While engaged in inquiries himself, he spread his party through the village to strike the trail of Champe's horse, a resort always recurred to. Some of his dragoons hit it just as the sergeant, leaving the village, got in the road to the Point. Pursuit was renewed with vigor, and again Champe was descried. He, apprehending the event, had prepared himself for it, by lashing his valise

---

Where did Champe seek refuge?

When Middleton failed at the bridge, what course did he take?

What event did Champe apprehend?

What did he then do?

(containing his clothes and orderly book) on his shoulders, and holding his drawn sword in his hand, having thrown away the scabbard. This he did to save what was indispensable to him, and to prevent any interruption to his swimming, should Middleton, as he presumed, when disappointed at the bridge, take the measures adopted by him. The pursuit was rapid and close, as the stop occasioned by the sergeant's preparations for swimming had brought Middleton within two or three hundred yards. As soon as Champe got abreast of the two galleys, he dismounted, and running through the marsh to the river, plunged into it, calling upon the galleys for help. This was readily given; they fired upon our horse, and sent a boat to meet Champe, who was taken in and carried on board, and conveyed to New York with a letter from the captain of the galley, stating the circumstances he had seen.

The horse with his equipments, the sergeant's cloak and scabbard, were recovered; the sword itself being held by Champe until he plunged in the river, was lost, as Middleton found it necessary to retire without searching for it.

About three o'clock in the evening our party returned, and the soldiers seeing the well known horse in our possession, made the air resound with exclamations that the scoundrel was killed.

Major Lee, called by this heart-rending annunciation from his tent, saw the sergeant's horse led by one of Middleton's dragoons, and began to reproach himself with the blood of the high prized, faithful and intrepid Champe. Stifling his agony he advanced to meet Middleton, and be-

---

How close was Middleton in the pursuit?

What was readily given? By whom?

Where was Champe taken?

At what time did the party return?

What did the soldiers do on seeing Champe's horse?

What is said of Major Lee at this time?

came somewhat relieved as soon as he got near enough to discern the countenance of his officer and party. There was evidence in their looks of disappointment, and he was quickly relieved by Middleton's information that the sergeant had effected his escape with the loss of his horse, and narrated the particulars just recited.

Never was a happier conclusion. The sergeant escaped unhurt, carrying with him to the enemy undeniable testimony of the sincerity of his desertion,—cancelling every apprehension before entertained, lest the enemy might suspect him of being what he really was.

Major Lee imparted to the commander-in-chief the occurrence, who was sensibly affected by the hairbreadth escape of Champe, and anticipated with pleasure the good effect sure to follow the enemy's knowledge of its manner.

On the fourth day after Champe's departure, Major Lee received a letter from him, written the day before in a disguised hand, without any signature, and stating what had passed after he got on board the galley, where he was kindly received.

He was carried to the commandant of New York as soon as he arrived, and presented the letter addressed to this officer from the captain of the galley. Being asked to what corps he belonged, and a few other common questions, he was sent under care of an orderly sergeant to the adjutant-general, who, finding that he was sergeant-major of the legion horse, heretofore remarkable for their fidelity, began to interrogate him. He was told by Champe, that such was the spirit of defection which prevailed among the

---

Why was this a happy conclusion?

How was Washington affected?

What information did Lee receive from Champe?

After he arrived at New York, where was he carried?

What examination did he undergo?

What was his reply to the British commandant?

American troops in consequence of Arnold's example, that he had no doubt, if the temper was properly cherished, Washington's ranks would not only be greatly thinned, but that some of his best corps would leave him. To this conclusion, the sergeant said, he was led by his own observations, and especially by his knowledge of the discontents which agitated the corps to which he had belonged. His size, place of birth, form, countenance, hair, the corps in which he had served, with other remarks, in conformity to the British usage, was noted down. After this was finished, he was sent to the commander-in-chief, in charge of one of the staff, with a letter from the adjutant-general. Sir Henry Clinton treated him very kindly, and detained him more than one hour, asking him many questions, all leading,—first, to know to what extent this spirit of defection might be pushed by proper incitements,—what the most operating incitements,—whether any general officers were suspected by Washington as concerned in Arnold's conspiracy, or any other officers of note;—who they were, and whether the troops approved or censured Washington's suspicions;—whether his popularity in the army was sinking, or continued stationary. What was Major Andre's situation,—whether any change had taken place in the manner of his confinement,—what was the current opinion of his probable fate,—and whether it was thought Washington would treat him as a spy. To these various interrogations, some of which were perplexing, Champe answered warily; exciting, nevertheless, hopes that the adoption of proper measures to encourage desertion (of which

---

What was noted down?

To whom was he then sent?

How did Sir Henry Clinton treat him?

What did Sir Henry wish first to know?

How did Champe reply to these various enquiries?

he could not pretend to form an opinion) would certainly bring off hundreds of the American soldiers, including some of the best troops, horse as well as foot. Respecting the fate of Andre, he said he was ignorant, though there appeared to be a general wish in the army that his life should not be taken; and that he believed it would depend more upon the disposition of Congress, than on the will of Washington.

After this long conversation ended, Sir Henry presented Champe with a couple of guineas, and recommended him to wait upon General Arnold, who was engaged in raising an American legion in the service of his Majesty. He directed one of his aids to write to Arnold by Champe, stating who he was, and what he had said about the disposition in the army to follow his example; which being soon done, the letter was given to the orderly attending on Champe to be presented with the deserter to General Arnold. Arnold expressed much satisfaction on hearing from Champe the manner of his escape, and the effect of Arnold's example; and concluded his numerous inquiries by assigning quarters to the sergeant,—the same as were occupied by his recruiting sergeants.

He also proposed to Champe to join his legion, telling him he would give him the same station he had held in the rebel service, and promising further advancement when merited. Expressing his wish to retire from war, and his conviction of the certainty of his being hung if ever taken by the rebels, he begged to be excused from enlistment; as-

---

What did he say respecting the fate of Andre?

To whom was he then sent?

What was Gen. Arnold engaged at this time in doing?

What did Sir Henry Clinton direct one of his aids to do?

How did Arnold receive Champe?

What did he propose to him?

How was this proposition received?

suring the General, that should he change his mind, he would certainly accept his offer. Retiring to his quarters, Champe now turned his attention to the delivery of his letters, which he could not effect until the next night, and then only to one of the two incogniti to whom he was recommended. This man received the sergeant with extreme attention, and having read the letter, assured Champe that he might rely on his faithful co-operation in every thing in his power consistent with his safety, to guard which required the utmost prudence and circumspection. The sole object in which the aid of this individual was required, regarded the General and others of our army, implicated in the information sent to Washington by him. To this object Champe urged his attention; assuring him of the solicitude it had excited, and telling him that its speedy investigation had induced the General to send him in to New York. Promising to enter upon it with zeal, and engaging to send out Champe's letters to Major Lee, he fixed the time and place for their next meeting, when they separated.

Major Lee made known to the General what had been transmitted to him by Champe, and received in answer directions to press Champe to the expeditious conclusion of his mission; as the fate of Andre would be soon decided, when little or no delay could be admitted in executing whatever sentence the court might decree. The same messenger who brought Champe's letter, returned with the ordered communication. Five days had nearly elapsed after reaching New York, before Champe saw the confidant to

---

What did he then turn his attention to?

How did this man receive him?

In what respect was the aid of this man required?

What passed between Lee and Washington?

What answer was received from Washington?

Whom did Champe see after five days?

whom only the attempt against Arnold was to be intrusted. This person entered with promptitude into the design, promising his cordial assistance. To procure a proper associate for Champe was the first object, and this he promised to do with all possible despatch. Furnishing a conveyance to Major Lee, to whom Champe stated that he had that morning (the last of September) been appointed one of Arnold's recruiting sergeants, having enlisted the day before with Arnold; and that he was induced to take this afflicting step, for the purpose of securing uninterrupted ingress and egress to the house which the General occupied; it being indispensable to a speedy conclusion of the difficult enterprise which the information he had just received had so forcibly urged. He added, that the difficulties in his way were numerous and stubborn, and that his prospect of success was by no means cheering. With respect to the additional treason, he asserted that he had every reason to believe that it was groundless; that the report took its rise in the enemy's camp, and that he hoped soon to clear up that matter satisfactorily. The pleasure which the last part of this communication afforded, was damped by the tidings it imparted respecting Arnold, as on his speedy delivery depended Andre's relief. The interposition of Sir Henry Clinton, who was extremely anxious to save his aid-de-camp, still continued; and it was expected the examination of witnesses and the defence of the prisoner, would protract the decision of the court of inquiry, now as-

---

How did this person enter into the measure?

What was it the first object to procure?

What appointment had Champe received?

Why was he induced to take this step?

What did he say respecting the additional treason?

How was the pleasure, which the last part of this communication afforded

Major Lee, damped?

What did Sir Henry Clinton continue to do?

R

sembled, and give sufficient time for the consummation of the project committed to Champe. A complete disappointment took place from a quarter unforeseen and unexpected. The honorable and accomplished Andre, knowing his guilt, disdained defence, and prevented the examination of witnesses by confessing the character in which he stood. On the next day, (the 2d of October) the court again assembled; when every doubt that could possibly arise in the case having been removed by the previous confession, Andre was declared to be a spy, and condemned to suffer accordingly.

The sentence was executed on the subsequent day in the usual form, the commander-in-chief deeming it improper to interpose any delay.

The fate of Andre, hastened by himself, deprived the enterprise committed to Champe of a feature which had been highly prized by its projector, and which had very much engaged the heart of the individual chosen to execute it.

Champe deplored the sad necessity which had occurred, and candidly confessed that the hope of enabling Washington to save the life of Andre, (who had been the subject of universal commiseration in the American camp) greatly contributed to remove the serious difficulties which opposed his acceding to the proposition when first propounded. Some documents accompanied this communication, tending to prove the innocence of the accused General; they were completely satisfactory, and did credit to the discrimina-

**What was expected?**

**How was a complete disappointment produced?**

**On the 2d of October, what took place?**

**What took place? How?**

**What did the fate of Andre do?**

**Champe deplored what?**

tion, zeal, and diligence of the sergeant. Nothing now remained to be done, but the seizure and safe delivery of Arnold. To this subject Champe gave his undivided attention.

Ten days elapsed before Champe brought his measures to conclusion, when Major Lee received from him his final communication, appointing the third subsequent night for a party of dragoons to meet him at Hoboken, when he hoped to deliver Arnold to the officer. Champe had from his enlistment into the American legion, (Arnold's corps) every opportunity he could wish, to attend to the habits of the General. He discovered that it was his custom to return home about twelve every night, and that previous to going to bed he always visited the garden. During this visit the conspirators were to seize him, and being prepared with a gag, intended to have applied the same instantly.

Adjoining the house in which Arnold resided, and that in which it was designed to seize and gag him, Champe had taken off several of the palings and replaced them, so that with care and without noise he could readily open his way to the adjoining alley. Into this alley he meant to have conveyed his prisoner, aided by his companion, one of two associates who had been introduced by the friend to whom Champe had been originally made known by letter from the commander-in-chief, and with whose aid and counsel he had so far conducted the enterprise. His other associate was with the boat prepared at one of the wharves on the Hudson river, to receive the party.

Champe and his friend intended to have placed themselves each under Arnold's shoulder, and to have thus

---

What remained now to be done?

Where was a party of dragoons to meet Champe?

What was Arnold's custom?

What was to be done in the garden?

borne him through the most unfrequented alleys and streets to the boat; representing Arnold, in case of being questioned, as a drunken soldier, whom they were conveying to the guard-house.

When arrived at the boat the difficulties would be all surmounted, there being no danger nor obstacle in passing to the Jersey shore. The day arrived, and Major Lee with a party of dragoons left camp late in the evening, with three led horses; one for Arnold, one for the sergeant, and the third for his associate, never doubting the success of the enterprise, from the tenor of the last received communication. The party reached Hoboken about midnight, where they were concealed in the adjoining wood,—Lee, with three dragoons, stationing himself near the river shore. Hour after hour passed,—no boat approached. At length the day broke and the Major retired to his party, and with his led horses returned to camp, when he proceeded to head-quarters to inform the General of the disappointment, as mortifying as inexplicable.

In a few days, Major Lee received an anonymous letter from Champe's patron and friend, informing him that on the day previous to the night fixed for the execution of the plot, Arnold had removed his quarters to another part of the town, to superintend the embarkation of troops, preparing (as was rumored) for an expedition to be directed by himself; and that the American legion, consisting chiefly of deserters, had been transferred from their barracks to one of the transports; it being apprehended that if left on shore until the expedition was ready, many of them might desert. Thus it happened that John Champe, in

---

Describe the preparations and arrangements for taking Arnold off?

What party reached Hoboken about midnight?

What letter was received a few days after?

What were its contents?

stead of crossing the Hudson that night, was safely deposited on board one of the fleet of transports, from whence he never departed until the troops under Arnold landed in Virginia! Nor was he able to escape from the British army until after the junction of Lord Cornwallis at Petersburg, when he deserted; and proceeding high up into Virginia, he passed into North Carolina near the Saura towns, and keeping in the friendly districts of that State, safely joined the army soon after it had passed the Congaree in pursuit of Lord Rawdon.

His appearance excited extreme surprise among his former comrades, which was not a little increased when they saw the cordial reception he met with from Lieutenant-Colonel Lee. His whole story soon became known to the corps, which re-produced the love and respect of officer and soldier, heightened by universal admiration of his daring and arduous attempt.

Champe was introduced to General Greene, who cheerfully complied with the promises made by the commander-in-chief, as far as in his power; and having provided the sergeant with a good horse and money for his journey, sent him to General Washington, who munificently anticipated every desire of the sergeant, and presented him with a discharge from further service,\* lest he might in the vi-

\* "When General Washington was called by President Adams to the command of the army, prepared to defend the country from French hostility, he sent to Lieutenant-Colonel Lee to inquire for Champe; being determined to bring him into the field at the head of a company of infantry.

When, and where, did Champe desert?

How was he received by Col. Lee, and his former comrades?

What did his story produce?

How was Champe treated by Greene? How by Washington?

What did Washington present him with? Why?

cissitudes of war, fall into the enemy's hands; when, if recognized, he was sure to die on a gibbet.

---

### SECTION XXXIII.

#### CAMPAIGN OF 1781—DEFEAT OF GREENE, BY LORD CORNWALLIS.

Though the Spaniards and the Dutch had united with France in hostility against Britain, she, with dauntless spirit, every where made head against her foreign enemies; and his Majesty's ministers were now, still more than ever, determined, by an extension of combined measures, to reduce the North American provinces to submission. The plan of the campaign of 1781, accordingly, comprehended active operations in the States of New York, Georgia, South Carolina, and Virginia. The invasion of the last mentioned province was intrusted to Arnold, who, taking with him a force of about 1600 men, and a number of armed vessels, sailed up the Chesapeake, spreading terror and devastation wherever he came. An attempt to intercept him was made by the French fleet, which sailed from Rhode Island for that purpose; but after an indecisive engagement with the squadron of Admiral Arbuthnot, off the capes of Virginia, was obliged to return to Newport, leaving the invaded province open to the incursions of the

“Colonel Lee sent to Loudon county, where Champe settled after his discharge from the army; but learned that the gallant soldier had removed to Kentucky, and had soon after died.”

---

Who had united with France?

What were his Majesty's ministers determined more than ever to do?

What was the plan of the campaign of 1781?

To whom was the invasion of Virginia intrusted?

What attempt was made to intercept his proceedings?

How did he discharge his trust?

British, who, making occasional advances into the country, destroyed an immense quantity of public stores, and enriched themselves with an extensive plunder of private property, at the same time burning all the shipping in the Chesapeake and its tributary streams, which they could not conveniently carry away as prizes. The Carolinas also suffered severely by the scourge of war. When Gates was superseded in the command of the American forces in that district, he was succeeded by General Greene, to whose charge he transferred the poor remains of his army, which were collected at Charlotte, in North Carolina, and which amounted only to 2000 men. These troops were imperfectly armed and badly clothed; and such was the poverty of their military chest, that they were obliged to supply themselves with provisions by forced requisitions made upon the inhabitants of the adjacent country. In these circumstances, to encounter the superior numbers of the enemy in pitched battle would have been madness. Greene, therefore, resolved to carry on the war as a partisan officer, and to avail himself of every opportunity of harassing the British in detail.

The first enterprise which he undertook in prosecution of this system was eminently successful. Understanding that the inhabitants of the district of Ninety-six, who had submitted to the royal authority, were severely harassed by the licensed acts of plunder committed by the king's troops and the loyalists, he sent General Morgan into that quarter with a small detachment, which was, on its arrival, speedily increased by the oppressed countrymen, who were burning for revenge. Lord Cornwallis, who was, at this

---

Who succeeded Gates in the Carolinas?

What was the number and situation of the remains of the army?

In what way did Greene resolve to carry on the war?

Describe his first enterprise.

moment, on the point of invading North Carolina, no sooner heard of this movement, than he sent Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton with 1100 men, to drive Morgan out of the district. Tarleton was an excellent partisan officer, and had gained great reputation by his superior activity, and by his success in various encounters with detached parties of the republican troops. This success, however, and the superiority of his numbers to those of Morgan's forces, caused him too much to despise the enemy. In pursuance of Lord Cornwallis's orders, he marched in quest of his antagonist, and, on the evening of the 16th of January, 1781, he arrived at the ground which General Morgan had quitted but a few hours before. At two o'clock the next morning he recommenced his pursuit of the enemy, marching with extraordinary rapidity through a very difficult country, and at daylight he discovered the enemy in his front. From the intelligence obtained from prisoners who were taken by his scouting parties, he learned that Morgan awaited his attack at a place called the Cowpens, near Pacolet river. Here the American commander had drawn up his little army, two-thirds of which consisted of militia, in two lines, the first of which was advanced about two hundred yards before the second, with orders to form on the right of the second in case the onset of the enemy should oblige them to retire. The rear was closed by a small body of regular cavalry, and about forty-five mounted militia-men. On the sight of this array, Tarleton ordered his troops to form in line. But before this arrangement was effected, that officer, obeying the dictates of valor rather than those of prudence, commenced the attack, heading his

---

Whom did Cornwallis send against Morgan?

How was Tarleton distinguished?

Where did Morgan await for him?

How was his army arranged?

squadron in person. The British advanced with a shout, and assailed the enemy with a well-directed discharge of musketry. The Americans reserved their fire till the British were within forty or fifty yards of their ranks, and then poured among them a volley which did considerable execution. The British, however, undauntedly pushed on and swept the militia off the field. They then assailed the second line, and compelled it to fall back on the cavalry. Here the Americans rallied, and renewed the fight with desperate valor; charging the enemy with fixed bayonets, they drove back the advance, and following up their success, overthrew the masses of their opponents as they presented themselves in succession, and finally won a complete and decisive victory. Tarleton fled from the bloody field, leaving his artillery and baggage in the possession of the enemy. His loss amounted to 300 killed and wounded, and 500 prisoners, whilst that of the Americans was only twelve killed and sixty wounded. Immediately after the action, General Greene sent off his prisoners, under a proper guard, in the direction of Virginia; and as soon as he had made the requisite arrangements, he followed them with his little army. On receiving intelligence of Tarleton's disaster, Lord Cornwallis hastened in pursuit of the retreating enemy, and forced his marches with such effect, that he reached the Catawba river on the evening of the day on which Morgan had crossed it; but here his progress was for a short while impeded, as a heavy fall of rain had rendered the stream impassable. When the waters subsided, he hurried on, hoping to overtake the fugitives before

---

Describe the battle?

What was Tarleton's loss in killed, wounded and prisoners?

Whither did Greene send his prisoners?

Where did Cornwallis follow in pursuit?

What impeded his progress?

they had passed the Yadkin; but when he had arrived at that river, he found to his mortification that they had crossed it, and had secured the craft and boats which they had used for that purpose on the eastern bank. He therefore marched higher up the stream, till he found the river fordable. Whilst he was employed in this circuitous movement, General Greene had united his forces with those of Morgan, at Guildford Court House. Still, however, the forces of the American commander were so inferior to those of his pursuers, that, not daring to risk an engagement, he hastened straight onwards to the river Dan; whilst Lord Cornwallis, traversing the upper country, where the streams are fordable, proceeded, in the hope that he might gain upon the enemy, so as to overtake them, in consequence of their being obstructed in their progress by the deep water below. But so active was Greene, and so fortunate in finding the means of conveyance, that he crossed the Dan into Virginia, with his whole army, artillery and baggage. So narrow, however, was his escape, that the van of Cornwallis's army arrived in time to witness the ferrying over of his rear.

Mortified as Lord Cornwallis was by being thus disappointed of the fruits of this toilsome march, he consoled himself by the reflection that, the American army being thus driven out of North Carolina, he was master of that province, and was in a condition to recruit his forces by the accession of the loyalists, with whom he had been led to believe that it abounded. He therefore summoned all true subjects of his majesty to repair to the royal standard, which

---

What further?

What did Greene do in the meantime?

Whither did he then hasten?

By what was Lord Cornwallis mortified? How consoled?

Whom did he summons?

he had erected at Hillsborough. This experiment had little success. The friends of government were in general timid, and diffident of his lordship's power ultimately to protect them. Their terrors were confirmed, when they learned that the indefatigable Greene had recrossed the Dan, and had cut off a body of tories who were on their march to join the royal forces, and that he had compelled Tarleton to retreat from the frontier of the province to Hillsborough. For seven days, the American commander maneuvered within ten miles of the British camp; and at the end of that time, having received reinforcements from Virginia, he resolved to give Lord Cornwallis battle. The engagement took place on the 15th of March, at Guildford. The American army consisted of 4400 men, and the British of only 2400; but notwithstanding this disparity of numbers, disciplined valor prevailed. The American militia gave way with precipitation, and though the regulars fought with spirit, they were obliged to retreat, but only to the distance of three miles. Lord Cornwallis kept the field, but he had suffered such loss in the action, that he was unable to follow up his victory, and soon afterwards marched towards Wilmington, leaving behind him his sick and wounded. On this march he was pursued by Greene as far as Deep river.

---

With what success?      Why?

How were their terrors confirmed?

What did Greene do for seven days?

Where did a battle take place?

Of what number did the American army consist?    What the British?

What was the result?

## SECTION XXXIV.

CAMPAIGN OF 1781 CONTINUED—DEFEAT OF LORD RAWDON,  
BY GENERAL GREENE.

At Wilmington, Lord Cornwallis made a halt for three days, for the purpose of giving his troops some rest; and at the end of that time, resolving to carry the war into Virginia, he marched to Petersburgh, an inland town of that province, situated on James river. Hither it was expected that he would have been followed by the enemy; but Greene being aware that his lordship had by this movement approached nearer to the main army of the Americans, and confident that his motions would be closely watched by the Virginia militia, after mature consideration adopted the bold measure of again penetrating into South Carolina. That province was in the military occupation of the British, who were, indeed, harassed by the partisan troops of Marion and Sumpter, but were in such apparent strength, that there was reason to fear that the republicans, if not aided by further support, would abandon the cause of their country in despair.\* The British had

“\* There were yet some citizens, who, in all fortunes, adhered with firmness to the cause of independence. Of these, in one part of the State, General Sumpter was the leader, in another, General Marion. The cavalry of the latter were so destitute of the weapons of war, that they were obliged to cut their swords from the saws of the saw-mills. He was so successful in concealing himself in woods and marshes, that the enemy were never able to attack or discover him. From these dark retreats he often sallied forth, and fell unexpectedly upon parties of the enemy, when marching through the country, or posted in garrisons to overawe the inhabitants. In one of these sallies, he released one hundred and fifty continentals captured at Camden. His

---

What did Cornwallis resolve?

What measure did Greene adopt?

What was the state of affairs in South Carolina at this time?

formed chains of posts, which extending from the sea to the western extremity of the province, maintained a mutual communication by strong patrols and bodies of horse. The first of these lines of defence was established on the Wataeree, on the banks of which river the British occupied the well-fortified town of Camden, and fort Watson, situated between that place and Charleston. The attack of the fort, Greene intrusted to Marion, who soon compelled its garrison to surrender on capitulation. In encountering Lord Rawdon, near Camden, Greene was not so fortunate. In consequence of the unsteadiness of a few of his troops, he was defeated, but moved off the ground in such good order that he saved his artillery, and though wounded, he took up a position, at the distance of about five miles from Camden, from which he sent out parties to intercept the supplies, of which he was apprised that his antagonist was in the utmost need. In consequence of the vigilance of Greene, in cutting off his resources, and of the loss of Fort Watson, which had been the link of his communication with Charleston, Lord Rawdon, after having in vain endeavored to bring on a second general engagement with the Americans, was reduced to the necessity of destroying a part of his baggage, and retreating to the south side of the river Santee. This retrograde movement encouraged the friends of Congress to resume their arms, and hasten to reinforce the corps of Marion, who speedily made him-

repeated and successful excursions preserved alive the spirit of resistance, and his high fame as a partizan was never tarnished by any violation of the laws of war or humanity."

How were the British posts situated?

What service did Marion perform?

In what did Greene fail? Why?

What was Lord Rawdon obliged to do?

What were the effects of this movement?

self master of the British posts on the Congaree, the garrisons of which were in general made prisoners, whilst those which escaped that fate by a timely evacuation of their positions, made good their retreat to the capital of the province. Savannah river now presented the last line of defence held by the British, who there possessed the town of Augusta and the post of Ninety-six. The former of those places was attacked by Lieutenant-Colonel Lee, and after a defence of unprecedented obstinacy on the part of its commander, Colonel Brown, it surrendered on honorable terms. The important post of Ninety-six, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Cruger, was strongly fortified, and defended by 500 men. On reconnoitering the place, General Greene, whose army was not much more numerous than the garrison, determined to besiege it in form. He accordingly broke ground on the 25th of May, and pushed his works with such vigor, that he had approached within six yards of the ditch, and had erected a mound thirty feet high, from which his riflemen poured their shot with fatal aim upon the opposite parapet of the enemy, who were hourly expected to beat a parley. But this bright prospect of success was at once overclouded by the arrival of intelligence that Lord Rawdon, having received reinforcements from Ireland, was hastening to the relief of his countrymen, at the head of 2000 men. In this extremity, Greene made a desperate effort to carry the place by assault, but was repulsed, and evacuating the works which he had constructed with so much labor, he retreated to the northward

---

Of what posts did Marion make himself master?

What were the possessions of the British now confined to?

| Who took the town of Augusta?

What was the situation of the post of Ninety-six?

By whom was it attacked?

Describe the plan of the battle?

What was the result? Why?

across the Saluda, from whence he was chased by Lord Rawdon beyond the Ennorece.

The feelings of the American commander on seeing the fruit of his toils thus suddenly and unexpectedly torn from his grasp, must have been of a most agonizing nature. But Greene was gifted with an elasticity of spirit which prevented him from yielding to the pressure of misfortune, and his opponents seldom found him more dangerous than immediately after suffering a defeat. On the present occasion, when some of his counsellors, in the moment of despondency, advised him to retreat into Virginia, he firmly replied, that 'he would save South Carolina, or perish in the attempt.' On maturely deliberating on the object of the campaign, and on the relative situation of himself and the enemy, he was well aware that though Lord Rawdon was superior to him in the number as well as the discipline of his troops; yet, if his lordship kept his army concentrated, he could afford no encouragement, or even protection, to the royalists, and that if it were divided, it might be beaten in detail. As he expected, the British commander, finding that he could not bring him to an engagement, took the latter course, and withdrawing a detachment from Ninety-six, re-established himself on the line of the Congaree. Within two days, however, after his arrival at the banks of that river, he was astonished to find his indefatigable enemy in his front, with numbers so recruited, that he thought it prudent to decline the battle which was offered him, and retreated to Orangeburgh, where he was joined

---

What were the feelings of Gen. Greene at this time?

What was a peculiar characteristic of him?

On this occasion what was he advised to do?

What was his reply?

On mature deliberation what was he well aware of?

What course did the British commander adopt?

By what was he astonished?

by Lieutenant-Colonel Cruger, who, in the present circumstances, had thought it expedient to evacuate his post at Ninety-six. On the junction of the forces of these two commanders, Greene retired to the heights above Santee, from whence he sent his active coadjutors, Marion and Sumpter, with strong scouting parties, to interrupt the communication between Orangeburgh and Charleston. As a last effort to maintain their influence in the center of the province, the British took post in force near the confluence of the Wateree and the Congaree; but on the approach of Greene, they retreated for the space of forty miles, and waited his threatened attack at the Eutaw Springs.\* Here

\* "On the 8th of September, at four in the morning, General Greene advanced with 2000 men, to attack them in their encampment. His army moved from the ground in the following order. The South and North Carolina militia, commanded by Generals Marion and Pickens, and by Colonel Majmedy, composed the front line; the continental troops, from North Carolina, Virginia, and Maryland, led on by General Sumner, Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, and Colonel Williams, composed the second line. The legion of Lieutenant-Colonel Lee covered the right flank; and the State troops of South Carolina, under Lieutenant-Colonel Henderson, covered the left. Lieutenant-Colonel Washington with his cavalry, and Captain Kirkwood with the Delaware troops, formed a corps de reserve. As the army advanced, the van fell in with two parties of the British, about four miles from the camp of Eutaw, and was briskly attacked: but the enemy, on receiving a heavy fire from the State troops, and a charge with the bayonet from the infantry of the legion, soon retired. On notice of the approach of the Americans, Lieutenant-Colonel Stewart, who commanded the British army, immediately formed the line of battle. It was drawn up obliquely across the road, on the heights near Eutaw Springs. The right flank was covered by a battalion, commanded by Major Majoribanks, the left of which approached the road, and was concealed by a thick hedge. The road was occupied by two pieces of artillery, and a covering party of infantry. The front lines of the Americans continuing to fire and advance, the action soon became general. In the heat of the engagement, Colonel Williams and Lieutenant-Colonel Lee, with their respective regiments, charged with the bayonet, and drove the British from the field."

To what place did he then retreat?

Where did Greene then retire to?

Where did he send Marion and Sumpter?

As a last effort what did the British do?

an obstinate engagement took place, in which the British were defeated with the loss of 1100 men, and were compelled to abandon the province to the republicans, and take shelter in Charleston. Of all the incidents of the American-Colonel Campbell, with the Maryland and Virginia continentals, were ordered to charge with trailed arms; and nothing could exceed the intrepidity with which these orders were executed. The troops rushed on in good order through a tremendous fire of artillery and musketry, and bore down all before them. Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, while leading on his men to the decisive charge, received a mortal wound. On inquiring, after he had fallen, who gave way, and being told that the British were fleeing in all quarters, he said, "I die contented," and immediately expired. A part of the British line, consisting of new troops, broke and fled; but the veteran corps received the charge of the assailants on the points of their bayonets. The hostile ranks were a short time intermingled, and the officers fought hand to hand; but Lee, who had turned the British left flank, charging them at this instant in the rear, their line was soon completely broken, and driven off the field. They were vigorously pursued by the Americans, who took upward of 500 of them prisoners. The enemy, on their retreat, took post in a large three story brick house, and in a picketed garden; and from these advantageous positions renewed the action. Four 6 pounders were ordered up before the house; but the Americans were compelled to leave these pieces and retire. They formed again at a small distance in the woods; but General Greene, thinking it inexpedient to renew the desperate attempt, left a strong picket on the field of battle, and retired with his prisoners to the ground from which he had marched in the morning. In the evening of the next day, Lieutenant-Colonel Stewart, leaving 70 of his wounded men and 1000 stand of arms, moved from Eutaw toward Charleston. The loss of the British, inclusive of prisoners, was supposed to be not less than 1100 men.\* The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and missing, was 555. Congress passed a vote of thanks to every corps in the army; and a resolution for presenting to Major-General Greene, "as an honorable testimony of his merit, a British standard, and a golden medal, emblematic of the battle, and of his victory." The battle of Eutaw may be considered as closing the revolutionary war in South Carolina."

\* "It was stated by themselves to be 693 men; of whom 85 only were killed in the field. General Greene, in his letter to congress of 11 September, says, that including 70 wounded who were left at Eutaw, he had made 500 prisoners.—"The fugitives," he observes, "spread such an alarm, that the enemy burnt their provisions at Dorchester, and quitted their post at Fairlawn. Nothing but

can revolutionary war, the most brilliant is this campaign of General Greene. At the head of a beaten army, undisciplined, and badly equipped, he entered the province of South Carolina, which was occupied, from its eastern to its western extremity, by an enemy much superior to him in number, in appointments, and in military experience. But by his genius, his courage, and his perseverance, he broke through their lines of operation, drove them from post to post, and though defeated in the field, he did not cease to harass them in detail, till he had driven them within the fortifications of the capital. Well did he merit the gold medal and the British standard bestowed upon him by a vote of Congress, for his services on this occasion. By his successes he revived the drooping spirits of the friends of independence in the Southern States, and prepared the way for the final victories which awaited the arms of his country in Virginia, and which led to the happy termination of the war.

Whilst the American commander was enjoying the honors bestowed upon him by his grateful countrymen, as the just meed of his valor and skill in arms, Lord Rawdon, soon after his return to Charleston, by an example of severity, brought odium on the British cause and fired the breasts of

the brick house, and their strong post at Eataw's, hindered the remains of the British army from falling into our hands." General Green testified high respect for the memory of Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell. Colonel Henderson, a valuable officer, received a dangerous wound during the action, and the command of the South Carolina State troops devolved on Colonel Wade Hampton, an officer of distinguished merit, who made a very spirited charge, in which he took upwards of 100 prisoners. In this confusion, Colonel Washington brought up the corps de reserve, and charged the enemy so briskly on the left, as to give them no time to rally; and upwards of 500 were taken prisoners. Colonel Washington was wounded; and while disengaging himself from his horse, which was shot under him, he was taken prisoner."

the continentals with indignation. Amongst the American officers, who distinguished themselves in the defence of South Carolina, was Colonel Haynes, a gentleman of fortune, and of considerable influence in his neighborhood. After the capitulation of Charleston, Haynes voluntarily surrendered himself to the British authorities, requesting to be allowed his personal liberty on his parole. This indulgence, usually granted to officers of rank, he could not obtain; and was told that he must either take the oath of allegiance to his Britannic Majesty, or submit to close confinement. In an evil hour, induced by family considerations he chose the former alternative, and signed a declaration of fealty to George III., protesting, however, against the clause which required him to support the royal government with arms; which clause, the officer who received his submission assured him it was not intended to enforce. The officer in question, no doubt in this assurance exceeded his authority, and Haynes was time after time summoned to join the royal standard. Regarding this as a breach of the contract into which he had entered with the British, he again took up arms on the side of independence, and having been taken prisoner in a skirmish with part of the royal forces, he was, without the formality of a trial, ordered for execution by Lord Rawdon. To the petitions of this unfortunate officer's children, as well as those of the inhabitants of Charleston, his lordship turned a deaf ear, and Haynes suffered death as a rebel and a traitor.\* Though the death of this gallant soldier, may be vindicated by the

\* "To their own, and to the great honor of human nature, numbers of the British and loyalists, with governor Bull at their head, preferred a petition to lord Rawdon in his behalf. But the petition was not noticed. The ladies then

What brought odium on the British cause?

Who was Colonel Haynes?

Give a description of his situation?

strictness of the law, its policy was, in the existing circumstances, extremely questionable.

came forward in his favor with a petition, couched in the most delicate and moving terms, and signed by all the principal females of Charleston, tories as well as whigs. But all to no purpose. It was then suggested by the friends of humanity, that if the colonel's little children, for they had no mother, she, poor woman ! crushed under the double weight of grief and the small-pox, was just sunk at rest in the grave. It was suggested, I say, that if the colonel's little children, dressed in mourning, were to fall at the knees of Lord Rawdon, he would pity their motherless condition, and give to their prayers their only surviving parent. They were accordingly dressed in black, and introduced into his presence: they fell down at his knees, and, with clasped hands and tear-streaming eyes, lisped their father's name, and begged his life: but in vain.

So many efforts to save him, both by friends and generous foes, could not be made, unknown to Colonel Haynes. But he appeared perfectly indifferent about the result; and when told that they had all failed, he replied with the utmost unconcern—"Well, thank God, Lord Rawdon cannot hurt me. He cannot be more anxious to take my life than I am to lay it down."

With his son, a youth of thirteen, who was permitted to stay with him in the prison, Colonel Haynes used often to converse, in order to fortify him against the sad trial that was at hand. And indeed it was necessary, for seldom has a heavier load been laid on a tender-hearted youth. War, like a thick cloud, had darkened up the gay morning of his days, the grave had just closed her mouth on a mother who doated on him; and he now beheld his only parent, a beloved father, in the power of his enemies, loaded with irons, and condemned to die. With cheeks wet with tears, he sat continually by his father's side, and looked at him with eyes so piercing and sad, as often wrung tears of blood from his heart.

"Why," said he, "my son, will you thus break your father's heart with unavailing sorrow? Have I not often told you, that we came into this world but to prepare for a better? For that better life, my dear boy, your father is prepared. Instead then of weeping, rejoice with me, my son, that my troubles are so near an end. To-morrow, I set out for immortality. You will accompany me to the place of my execution; and when I am dead, take and bury me by the side of your mother."

The youth here fell on his father's neck, crying, "Oh my father! Oh my father! I will die with you! I will die with you!"

Colonel Haynes would have returned the strong embrace of his son; but, alas! his hands were loaded with irons. "Live," said he, "my son, live to honor God by a good life; live to serve your country; and live to take care of your brother and little sisters!"

NOTE.—An instance of personal courage and hardihood occurred on the Eastern frontier about this time, and is thus related by the late President Dwight, who had it from General Wadsworth.

‘ After the failure of the expedition against the British garrison at Penobscot, General Wadsworth was sent, in the spring of 1780, by the Legislature of Massachusetts to command in the district of Maine. The principal objects of his mission were to retain the inhabitants in their allegiance, and in their attachment to the American cause, and to obstruct the efforts of the enemy. In these employments he spent the summer of 1780, and the principal part of the following winter. Before the end of February he dismissed his troops ; the period of their enlistment being finished ; and began to make the necessary preparations for his return to Boston. Mrs. Wadsworth, and a friend of hers, Miss Fenno of Boston, had accompanied him, and continued here till this time.

The next morning Colonel Haynes was conducted to the place of execution. His son accompanied him. Soon as they came in sight of the gallows, the father strengthened himself and said—“ Now, my son, show yourself a man. That tree is the boundary of my life and of all my life’s sorrows. Beyond that, the wicked cease from troubling and the weary are at rest. Don’t lay too much to heart our separation from you ; it will be but short. ’Twas but lately your dear mother died. To-day I die. And you, my son, though but young must shortly follow us.”

“ Yes, my father,” replied the broken-hearted youth, “ I shall shortly follow you : for indeed I feel that I cannot live long.” And so it happened to him. For on seeing his father in the hands of the executioner, and then struggling in the halter, he stood like one transfixed and motionless with horror. Till then he had wept incessantly ; but soon as he saw that sight, the fountain of his tears was staunched, and he never wept more. It was thought that grief, like a fever, burnt inwardly, and scorched his brain, for he became indifferent to every thing around him, and often wandered as one disordered in his mind. At times, he took lessons from a fencing master, and talked of going to England to fight the murderer of his father. But he who made him had pity on him, and sent death to his relief. He died insane, and in his last moments often called on the name of his father, in terms that brought tears from the hardest hearts.”

‘His preparations for returning could not escape notice. A neighboring inhabitant, hostile to the American cause, had attentively observed his motions, and announced his design to the commander of the British fort; observing, that, if he seized the present moment, he might make General Wadsworth a prisoner; that he was defenceless, having only six soldiers under his command; that he would speedily leave the country; and that the least delay would frustrate this important object. The British commander listened eagerly to the intelligence; and immediately sent a party of twenty-five soldiers, with their officers, to attack the house in which he lodged. They embarked in a small schooner, already equipped for a cruise; and proceeded to an inlet, four miles from the General’s quarters, called West South River. Here they arrived at the beginning of the evening; and lay concealed until 11 o’clock, in the house of one Snow, a Methodist preacher; professedly a friend to General Wadsworth, but really a traitor. The ground was covered with snow, and the weather severely cold. The surface, in the neighborhood of the house, was hilly. An enemy could therefore advance within a few rods without being discovered. For this reason the sentinel at the door was regularly ordered to fire his piece at the appearance of an enemy, and to escape without attempting to enter the house; as any effort of this nature would enable the enemy to enter at the same time.

• The party came so suddenly upon the sentinel, that he gave the alarm, instead of firing, by crying, “Who is there?” His comrades instantly opened the door; and as he went in, the enemy fired a volley into the kitchen, which was the soldier’s guard-room, and entered it together with the sentinel. Another party of them at the same instant fired through the windows of the room, in which the General and his lady slept, and blew the windows in.

A third, at the same moment, forced their way through the windows, and took possession of Miss Fenno's room. Thus they were masters of the whole house, except the room where the General lay, which was strongly barred. The British officers, finding nobody in Miss Fenno's room, beside her and Mrs. Wadsworth, who hastily dressing herself, had escaped into it, ordered the firing there to cease.

General Wadsworth had a pair of pistols, a blunderbuss, and a fusee. With the pistols, which he had discharged several times, he had defended the windows of his room, and a door, which opened into the kitchen, and prevented the assailants from entering. He now heard their feet advancing through the front entry, and snapped his blunderbuss at them. They retreated. He snapped it again at several of the soldiers, who were forcing their way through the pannel of the kitchen door. These retreated also. He then seized his fusee, and discharged it upon some others, who were breaking through one of the windows. These also fled. The attack was then renewed through the entry. Against this he defended himself with his bayonet. His linen discovering him to the soldiers in the kitchen, they fired at him; and one of their balls went through his left arm, and terminated the contest.

Upon his announcing that he would surrender, the firing was ordered to cease. The soldiers, however, continued to fire from the kitchen. General Wadsworth, unbaring the door, and opening it, said, "My brave fellows, why do you fire after I have surrendered?" The soldiers rushed into his room; and one of them, who had been badly wounded, exclaimed with an oath, "You have taken my life, and I will take yours," pointed a musket at his breast. The commanding officer, who had entered the room through the other door at that moment, struck the musket with his sword, and saved the General's life. One of the

officers now brought a candle from Miss Fenno's room; and exclaimed, "Sir, you have defended yourself too well; you have done too much for one man. You must excuse haste. Shall we help you on with your clothes? You see, we are in a critical situation." The soldiers were ordered out to parade before the door. The General's clothes were soon put on, except his coat; which his wounded arm rendering it impossible for him to wear, it was committed to a soldier. Mrs. Wadsworth and Miss Fenno came into the room; and, suppressing their intense emotions with admirable fortitude, proposed to examine the General's wound. This, however, the haste of the party prevented. Mrs. Wadsworth threw a blanket over him; and Miss Fenno tied a handkerchief very closely around his arm, to check the copious effusion of blood. A soldier then took him out of the house. He was much exhausted; and, supposing that the ball had cut an artery, told the officer, he would not carry him far. Fortunately, however, the blood, being congealed by the cold, and stayed by the bandage, ceased to flow; and his strength and spirits speedily returned.

'The party withdrew in great haste; and increased their expedition, in consequence of the report of a musket, fired at no great distance on the other side of the river. The two wounded British soldiers were mounted on a horse, taken from General Wadsworth's barn. The General himself, and a wounded American soldier, were on foot; but were aided in their march by their captors. When they had proceeded about a mile, a number of persons, who had gathered at a small house on the way, and who had seen the party when they went out, hailed them; and asked whether they had taken General Wadsworth. They said no: and added, that they wished to leave a wounded man with them; that, if they took good care of him, they should be well paid; but, if not, that they would come and burn

their house. The wounded man, apparently dying, was then carried into the house; and General Wadsworth, after being warned, that his safety depended upon his silence, was set on the horse behind the other wounded soldier. A part of their course lay over a frozen mill-pond, about a mile in length. At the head of this pond they were met by some of the party, who had been left behind, to take care of the Methodist preacher's house. These, having learned the success of the enterprise, hurried back to the privateer, to carry the news. When the party reached the privateer, some were overjoyed, and others swore bitterly. The Captain, particularly, was in a rage, on being informed that he must return with his privateer to the fort; and, instead of sending the prisoner by a small boat, as had been originally proposed, must convey him in his vessel. Seeing some of his men wounded, he demanded with a furious voice, how he, the General, dared to fire on the King's troops; damned him for a rebel; and ordered him to go, and help launch the boat; declaring, that, if he did not, he would put his hanger through his body. General Wadsworth coolly answered, that he was a prisoner; was badly wounded; and could not assist in launching the boat; however he might think proper to treat him.

• The commanding officer had gone into the house, to take some refreshment; but hearing of this abusive behavior of the Captain, returned immediately; and, in a manner very honorable to himself, told the Captain, that the prisoner was a gentleman, had made a brave defence, and was to be treated accordingly. At the same time he informed him, that he must return with his privateer to Bagaduce; (the point on which the British fort stood;) both on account of the prisoner, and of his own wounded men; and must therefore embark his own people, and the party, immediately. He added further, that his conduct should be repre-

sented to General Campbell as soon as he arrived. The poor Captain, thunder-struck with this denunciation, lost his importance in a moment. The men were embarked; the stern of the boat was given to the General; and, after they had gone on board, the best cabin, and the most comfortable things which the vessel could afford.

‘The General’s arm was now benumbed, rather than painful. The vessel was soon under weigh; and a cold northern wind drove her with such violence, as seriously to incommodate General W., and his fellow sufferers.

‘I will now return to the ladies, who were left behind in their desolated house. Not a window in this habitation escaped the destruction. The doors were broken down; and two of the rooms were set on fire. The floors were drenched with blood; and on one of them lay a brave old soldier, (through whose arm, near the shoulder joint, had been driven the whole charge of a musket; consisting of a wad, powder, and ball,) begging for death, that he might be relieved from his misery. To add to the sufferings of these unfortunate ladies, a number of the neighboring inhabitants, having heard of the disaster, flocked in, and filled the house. Here they did nothing but gaze about with an idle curiosity, or make useless, numerous, and very troublesome, inquiries. Scarcely any thing could be more wearisome, or more provoking. At length the ladies assumed resolution enough to reprove them with some severity; and thus restored them from the stupor, produced by these novel and disastrous events, to thought, feeling, and exertion. As soon as they had fairly recovered themselves, they very cordially, and kindly united their efforts to render the best offices in their power. The next morning they repaired the doors and windows; cleansed the floors; dressed the wounded man in the best manner in their power; and plac-

ed the family in as comfortable circumstances, as the case would admit.

You will easily believe, that the solicitude of both General Wadsworth and the ladies, particularly of Mrs. Wadsworth, was extreme. What an affectionate wife must feel for a husband, situated as he was, nothing but the experience of such a wife, in such circumstances, could enable even the female heart to realize. To all his other distresses was added, in the mind of the General, the most excruciating anxiety concerning his little son; a boy of five years old. This child, and a sister younger than himself, slept with a maid in the bed-room; directly in the range of the enemy's first discharge into the kitchen. As the General was leaving the door, after he had been made a prisoner, the maid came to it with the younger child; but he could not recollect that he had seen his son, after the onset. This, he thought, could scarcely have happened, unless the child had been killed.

Near the close of the day the privateer approached the place of her destination. The signal of success was made; the capture of General Wadsworth announced; and the shore thronged with spectators, to see the man who, through the preceding year, had disappointed all the designs of the British in this quarter. They were composed of Britons, and American refugees, of every class. David has often deprecated in the most pathetic manner the triumph of his enemies. General Wadsworth was now furnished with an opportunity of realising the import of the language, and entering deeply into the feelings of the Psalmist.

The General left the privateer amid loud shouts of the rabble, which covered the shore; and was conducted to the house of a very respectable refugee, until a report concerning the success of the expedition should be made to Gen-

eral Campbell, the commandant of the post, and his orders should be received.

‘A guard soon came, with orders to bring the prisoner to the guard-room, within the fort, which was about half a mile from the landing. A guard, even of an enemy, was to him a very desirable accompaniment at the present time; for among those who were around him, there were many persons, from whom, in these circumstances, he had nothing to expect but abuse. When he arrived at the fort, he was conducted into the officers’ guard-room, and was treated with politeness. Soon after, General Campbell sent a messenger to General Wadsworth with his compliments; informing him that his situation should be made as comfortable as it could be; and that a surgeon should attend him immediately, to dress his wound. The surgeon soon came, and upon examination found the joint of the elbow uninjured, and pronounced the wound to be free from danger, if the artery was unhurt. This, he said, could not be determined, until a suppuration had taken place. After the wound had been dressed, and supper served, General Wadsworth retired to rest. In the morning the Commandant sent an invitation to him to breakfast with him; and at table paid him very handsome compliments on the defence which he had made, observing, however, that he had exposed himself in a degree not perfectly justifiable. His guest replied, that from the manner of the attack, he had no reason to suspect any design of taking him alive; and that he intended, therefore, to sell his life as dearly as possible. “These things,” said General Campbell, “are very natural to gentlemen of our profession. But, Sir, I understand that the Captain of the privateer treated you very ill. I shall see that matter set right.” He then informed his guest, that a room in the officers’ barracks, within the fort, was prepared for him; and that he should send his orderly

sergeant daily, to attend him to breakfast and dinner, at his table; where a seat would always be reserved for him, whenever he chose to accept of it. This polite proffer was followed by other observations of the same general nature; after which General Wadsworth withdrew to his quarters.

‘He was now alone. He was a prisoner. The ardor of enterprise was over. He had no object to engage his attention; no plan to pursue; no motive to excite an effort, or even to rouse a vigorous thought. The calm, sluggish course, became absolutely dead, when contrasted by his mind with the storm of war, which had just passed over. General Campbell, probably foreseeing that such must be his prisoner’s situation, sent him in the course of the forenoon several books of amusement; and then, calling upon him in person, endeavored by cheerful conversation to make the time pass agreeably.

‘Not long after, the officers of the party came in to inquire concerning his situation; and, while they were present, appeared the redoubtable Captain of the privateer. He told General Wadsworth, that he called to ask pardon for what had fallen from him, when in a passion; that it was not in his nature to treat a gentleman prisoner ill; that the unexpected disappointment of his cruise had thrown him off his guard; and that he hoped that this would be deemed a sufficient apology. General Wadsworth accepted it; and his visitors withdrew. Neither books, nor company, however, could prevent the forenoon from being tedious and long. “Remembrance,” in spite of amusement, would “wake with all her busy train.” Anticipation, sometimes her very restless and intrusive companion, would present melancholy pictures; and whisper prophecies of suffering and sorrow. About four o’clock, P. M., the orderly sergeant, presenting the compliments of the Commandant, summoned General Wadsworth to dinner. He

accepted the invitation, notwithstanding his sufferings; and, particularly, as he had a wish to see the guests. They were numerous; and consisted of all the principal officers of the garrison. Their conversation was evidently guarded, but delicate; and particularly polite to the stranger. His arm, however, began to be painful; and having satisfied his curiosity, he respectfully withdrew.

The first object, which now seriously engaged his attention, was to obtain some knowledge concerning the situation of his wife and family, and to communicate his own to them. For this purpose he wrote, the next morning, a billet to the Commandant; requesting, that a flag of truce might be sent to a militia officer in Camden; a town on the south-western skirt of Penobscot bay, not far distant from Bagaduce; with a letter to the Governor of Massachusetts, and another to Mrs. Wadsworth. The request was immediately granted, on the condition, that the letter to the Governor should be inspected. To this General Wadsworth made no objection. The letter contained nothing, but an account of his own situation, a request, that an exchange might be speedily effected in his favor; and an exhibition of the obliging manner in which he had been treated, since he had been made a prisoner. The letter was perfectly acceptable to the British commander.

The flag was given to Lieutenant Stockton; the officer by whom General Wadsworth had been taken prisoner. As soon as the weather permitted, he set out for Camden in a boat; and within a fortnight from the disastrous night mentioned above, returned with a letter from Mrs. Wadsworth. This letter to his great joy informed him, that his wife and family were in more comfortable circumstances than he had been prepared to imagine, and particularly, that his son was alive. The child had slept through the

whole of that dreadful night; and knew nothing of the family sufferings, until the next morning.

• This fortnight had been a painful one to General Wadsworth. The increasing inflammation of his wound had confined him entirely to his room; and the sudden transition from domestic happiness to a gloomy solitude, and from liberty to a prison, admitted of few consolations. General Campbell, continued his attention to him for some time. About half of the officers in the garrison called upon him as often as propriety permitted. Their conversation, in which political discussions were carefully avoided, was intentionally made as agreeable to him as might be. They also sent him in succession a variety of entertaining books. Upon the whole, the connexion formed between him and them became not only pleasant but interesting.

• At the end of five weeks, his wound was so far healed, that he was able to go abroad. He then sent to General Campbell a note, requesting the customary privilege of a parole. The request was not granted. The reasons assigned were, that it would be unsafe for General Wadsworth to expose himself to the hostility of the refugees, some of whom were his bitter enemies; that the garrison might be endangered by the inspection of a military man; and, particularly, that General Campbell had reported his situation to the Commanding officer at New York, and must therefore receive his directions, before he made any alterations in the circumstances of the prisoner. These reasons had weight; and General Wadsworth acquiesced. At the same time he was permitted to take the air in pleasant weather, by walking some time, every convenient day, on the parade within the fort, under the care of the officer of the guard. In these walks he was attended by two sentinels, and accompanied by some of the officers of the garrison. These little excursions were very favorable,

both to his health and spirits. Upon the whole, to use his own language, his confinement became tolerable.

‘In about two months, when the mild season was approaching, and began to relax the chains of winter, Mrs. Wadsworth, and Miss Fenno, under the protection of a passport from General Campbell, arrived at Bagaduce; and were conducted with much civility to his quarters.—General Campbell, and many of his officers, cheerfully contributed their efforts to render the visit agreeable to all concerned. It continued ten days. In the mean time an answer, or rather orders, had arrived from the commanding general at New York. This General Wadsworth augured from the change of countenance in some of the officers. The import of the orders was intentionally concealed from Mrs. W. and Miss F. But Miss F. had accidentally learned their nature by a hint which fell from an officer, occasionally at the general’s quarters, and indicated that he was not to be exchanged, but to be sent either to New York, or Halifax, or some other place in the British dominions. This information she carefully concealed, until the moment of her departure; when, to prevent Mrs. W. from suspecting her design, she barely said with a significant air, “General Wadsworth, take care of yourself.”—The weather being fine, the ladies re-embarked; and without any serious misfortune landed the second day at Camden.

‘Soon after the departure of the ladies, General Wadsworth was informed, that a parole could not be given to him, because some of the refugees had communicated unfavorable information concerning him to the commander-in-chief at New York. From this time, General Campbell withheld his civilities. Other officers in the garrison, however, visited him daily; treated him with polite attention; and beguiled by various amusements the tedious hours of

his captivity. He learned from the servants who attended him, that he was not to be exchanged, but sent to England as a rebel of too much consequence to be safely trusted with his liberty.

‘Not long afterwards, about the middle of April, Major Benjamin Burton, an agreeable, brave, and worthy man, who had served under General Wadsworth the preceding summer, was taken, on his passage from Boston to St. George’s river, the place of his residence; brought to the fort at Bagaduce; and lodged in the same room with General Wadsworth. Burton confirmed the report of the servants. He had learned from a source which he justly regarded as authentic, that both himself and the general were to be sent, immediately after the return of a privateer, now out upon a cruise, either to New York or to Halifax; and thence to England. There they were to remain prisoners until the close of the war; and were to be treated afterwards as circumstances should direct. This intelligence, thus confirmed, explained at once the monitory caution of Miss Fenno; and perfectly exhibited to General Wadsworth the importance of *taking care of himself*.

‘The gentlemen were not long in determining, that they would not cross the Atlantic as prisoners. They resolved, that they would effect their escape, or perish in the attempt. When an enterprise, bordering on desperation, is resolutely undertaken, the means of accomplishing it are rarely wanted.

‘It must, however, be admitted, that scarcely any circumstances could promise less than theirs. They were confined in a grated room, in the officer’s barracks, within the fort. The walls of this fortress, exclusively of the depth of the ditch surrounding it, were twenty feet high; with fraising on the top, and chevaux-de-frise at the bottom.—Two sentinels were always in the entry; and their door,

the upper part of which was a window-sash, might be opened by these watchmen, whenever they thought proper; and was actually opened at seasons of peculiar darkness and silence. At the exterior doors of the entries sentinels were also stationed; as were others in the body of the fort, and at the quarters of General Campbell. At the guard-house a strong guard was daily mounted. Several sentinels were daily stationed on the walls of the fort; and a complete line occupied them by night. Without the ditch, glacis, and abattis, another complete set of soldiers patrolled through the night also. The gate of the fort was shut at sunset; and a piquet guard was placed on, or near the isthmus, leading from the fort to the main land.

Bagaduce, on the middle of which the fort stands, is a peninsula, about a mile and a half in length, and a mile in breadth; washed by Penobscot bay on the south, Bagaduce, river on the east, on the north-west by a broad cove, and throughout the remainder of the circle by the bay and river of Penobscot. A sandy beach, however, connects it with the main land on the western side. From these facts the difficulties of making an escape may be imperfectly imagined. Indeed, nothing but the melancholy prospect of a deplorable captivity in the hands of an enemy, exasperated by a long and tedious war, carried on against those who were deemed rebels, could have induced the prisoners to take this resolution.

Not long after, a cartel arrived from Boston, bringing letters from the governor and council to General Wadsworth, with a proposal for his exchange, and a sum of money, &c. for his use. These were carefully delivered to him; but the exchange being, as General Campbell said, not authorised, he refused to liberate the prisoners. This determination they had expected.

Several plans were proposed by the gentlemen for their

escape; and successively rejected. At length they resolved on the following. The room in which they were confined was ceiled with boards. One of these they determined to cut off, so as to make a hole sufficiently large for a man to go through. After having passed through this hole, they proposed to creep along one of the joists, under which these boards were nailed, and thus to pass over the officers' rooms bordering on it, until they should come to the next, or middle entry; and then to lower themselves down into this entry by a blanket which they proposed to carry with them. If they should be discovered, they proposed to act the character of officers, belonging to the garrison, intoxicated. These being objects to which the sentinels were familiarized, they hoped in this disguise to escape detection. If they should not be discovered, the passage to the walls of the fort was easy. Thence they intended to leap into the ditch; and if they escaped without serious injury from the fall, to make the best of their way to the cove; on the surface of whose water they meant to leave their hats floating, (if they should be closely pursued,) to attract the fire of the enemy; while they were softly and silently making their escape.

Such was their original plan. Accordingly, after the prisoners had been seen by the sentinel, looking through the glass of the door, to have gone to bed, General Wadsworth got up, the room being dark; and, standing in a chair, attempted to cut with his knife the intended opening; but he found the attempt useless and hazardous. It was useless, because the labor was too great to be accomplished with the necessary expedition. It was hazardous, because the noise made by the strokes of the knife, could not fail, amid the profound silence, of being heard by the sentinel; and because the next morning must bring on an unpleasant detection. This part of the design was, therefore, given up.

‘The next day, a soldier, who was their barber, was requested to procure a large gimblet, and bring it with him, when he came the next time to dress General Wadsworth. This he promised and performed, without a suspicion that it was intended for any thing more than amusement. He received a dollar for this piece of civility; and was sufficiently careful not to disclose a secret, which might create trouble for himself.

‘The prisoners waited with anxiety for the arrival of the succeeding night. To their surprise, the noise made by the gimblet was such as to alarm their apprehensions, and induce them again to desist. They were, however, not discouraged; but determined to make the experiment again during the day, when they hoped the noise would either not be heard at all, or would attract no notice. The *eyes* of the sentinels were now to be eluded; for the operation must in this case be performed at times, when they might very naturally be employed in inspecting the room. It was necessary, also, to escape the observation of their servants, who often came in without any warning; and that of the officers, who were accustomed to visit them at almost all times of the day. But on these difficulties their persevering minds dwelt, only for the purpose of overcoming them. The two sentinels, who guarded the prisoners, commonly walked through the entry, one after the other, from the front of the building to the rear. This distance was exactly the breadth of two rooms. After they had begun their walk, the prisoners watched them with attention, until they acquired a complete comprehension of the length of the intervals between the moments, at which the sentinels successively passed their door. The prisoners then began to walk within their room, at the same pace with that of the watchmen; the sound of their feet being mutually heard; and all passing by the glass door the same way, at the same time. The prisoners in this manner took two

turns across the room, while a sentinel took one through the entry. This difference of time gave them all the opportunities, which they enjoyed, for using their gimblet.

General Wadsworth being of the middle stature, could, while standing on the floor, only reach the ceiling with the ends of his fingers. But Major Burton was very tall, and could reach it conveniently; so as to use the gimblet without the aid of a chair. This was a very fortunate circumstance; as it saved appearances, and not improbably prevented the discovery to which they were exposed from so many sources. Accordingly, whilst the garrison was under arms on the parade, and their servants were purposely sent away on errands, the gentlemen began their walk, and passed by the glass door with the sentinels. General Wadsworth then walked on; but Major Burton, stopping short in the proper spot, perforated the ceiling with his gimblet, in sufficient season to join General Wadsworth on his return. Again they passed the door, and returned, as if by mere accident, when the ceiling was in the same manner perforated again. This process was repeated until a sufficient number of holes were bored. The interstices in the mean time were cut through with a pen-knife; the wounds in the ceiling, which were small, being carefully covered with a paste of chewed bread, almost of the same color with that of the board. The dust, made by the gimblet, was also carefully swept from the floor. In this manner they completely avoided suspicion, either from the sentinels, the servants, or the gentlemen by whom they were visited. In the course of three weeks a board was entirely cut asunder, except a small part at each corner, which was left for the purpose of holding the severed piece in its proper place, lest some accident should open the passage prematurely.

During all this time the prisoners had watched every thing, which related to the return of the privateer, in which

they were to be embarked. They had, also, made every unsuspicious inquiry in their power, while occasionally conversing with their visitors, and with the servants, concerning the situation of the exterior part of the fort; the ditch, the position of the chevaux-de-frise, the fraising, the posting of the outer sentinels, and piquet-guard. The scraps of information, which were obtained in this cautious manner, General Wadsworth, who was tolerably well acquainted with the place, was able to put together in such a manner as to form a complete view of the whole ground; to fix with precision the place where they should attempt to cross the wall; where, if separated by accident, they should meet again; and to determine on several other objects of the same general nature. Major Burton, whose first acquaintance with Bagaduce commenced when he was landed as a prisoner, was less able to form correct views concerning these subjects; and labored, therefore, under disadvantages, which might prove serious.

‘The privateer was now daily expected. It is hardly necessary to observe that the prisoners regarded the moment of her approach with extreme anxiety. They wished for a dark and boisterous night, to conceal their attempt, and to escape from the observation of their guard; but determined that if such an opportunity should not be furnished before the return of the privateer, to seize the best time which should occur. A part of the meat, supplied for their daily meals, they laid up and dried, and preserved the crust of their bread, to sustain them on their projected excursion. They also made, each a large skewer of strong wood; with which they intended to fasten the corner of a large bed-blanket to one of the stakes in the fraising, on the top of the wall; in order to let themselves down more easily into the ditch.

‘When their preparations were finished, a whole week elapsed without a single favorable night. Their anxiety

became intense. The weather became warm; and the butter which had been accidentally attached to some of the bread, employed as paste to cover the holes in the ceiling, spread along the neighboring parts of the board, and discolored them to a considerable extent. This fact alarmed them not a little; particularly when their visitors were now and then gazing around the room in which they were confined. Nor were their apprehensions at all lessened by several incidental expressions of some British officers, which to the jealous minds of the prisoners seemed to indicate that their design was discovered.

On the afternoon of June 18th the sky was overcast.—At the close of evening, thick clouds from the south brought on an unusual darkness. The lightning began to blaze with intense splendor, and speedily became almost incessant.—About eleven o'clock, the flashes ceased. The prisoners sat till this time, apparently playing at cards, but really waiting the return of absolute darkness. Suddenly rain began to descend in torrents. The darkness was profound. The propitious moment for which they had so long waited with extreme solicitude, had, as they believed, finally come, and more advantageously than could have been reasonably expected. They, therefore, went immediately to bed; while the sentinel was looking through the glass door; and extinguished their candles.

They then immediately rose, and dressed themselves. General Wadsworth, standing in a chair, attempted to cut the corner of the board which had been left to prevent the severed piece from falling; but found that he made a slow progress. Major Burton then took the knife; and within somewhat less than an hour completed the intended opening. The noise, attending this operation, was considerable; but was drowned by the rain upon the roof. Burton ascended first, and being a large man forced his way through the hole with difficulty. Burton went down, and

along the joists till he reached the middle entry; where he was to wait for his companion. The fowls which roosted above these rooms, gave notice of his passage by their cackling; but it was unheeded, and perhaps unheard, by the sentinels. As soon as this noise ceased, General Wadsworth put his blanket through the hole, fastened it with a skewer, and attempted with this aid to make his way through the passage, standing in a chair below. But he found his arm weaker and of less service than he had expected. He did not accomplish his design without extreme difficulty. But the urgency of the case reanimated his mind, invigorated his limbs, and enabled him, at length, to overcome every obstacle. The auspicious rain, in the mean time, roaring incessantly on the roof of the building, entirely concealed the noise, which he made during this part of his enterprise, and which in a common season must certainly have betrayed him.

‘When the general had reached the middle entry, he could not find his companion. After searching for him several minutes in vain, he perceived the air blowing in through the door of the entry; and concluded that Major Burton had already gone out, and left the door open. He therefore gave over the search, and proceeded to take care of himself. After passing through the door he felt his way along the eastern side, the northern end, and a part of the western side of the building; walking directly under the sheet of water, which poured from the roof, that he might avoid impinging against any person accidentally in his way; a misfortune to which he was entirely exposed by the extreme darkness of the night.

‘After he had reached the western side of the building, he made his way toward the neighboring wall of the fort, and attempted to climb the bank; but the ascent being steep, and the sand giving way, he found it impossible to

reach the top. He then felt out an oblique path; and ascended to the top; as from his window he had observed the soldiers do, when they went out to man the wall. After he had gained the top, he proceeded to the spot on the north bastion, where Burton and himself had agreed to cross the wall, if no accident should intervene. When he had arrived at this place, and was endeavoring to discover the sentry boxes, that he might creep between them, across the top of the wall, the guard-house door on the opposite side of the fort was thrown open, and the sergeant of the guard called, "Relief, turn out." Instantly there was a scrambling on the gorge of the bastion, opposite to that where he now was. This scrambling he knew must be made by Burton. The rain, in the mean time, kept the sentinels within their boxes; and made such a noise on *them*, that they could not hear that which was made by the prisoners. In this critical moment no time was to be lost. The relief guard was approaching. General Wadsworth made all haste, therefore, to get himself with his heavy blanket across the parapet, upon the fraising, which was on the exterior margin of the wall; a measure indispensable to prevent the relief from treading on him, as they came round on the top of the wall; and he barely effected it during the time in which the relief was shifting the sentinels. At the same time he fastened with the skewer, the corner of his blanket round a picket of the fraising; so that it might hang at the greatest length beneath him.— After the relief had passed on, the general with great difficulty, arising particularly from the lameness of his arm, slid with his feet foremost off the ends of the pickets of the fraising; clinging with his arms and hands to the ends; thus bringing himself underneath the pickets, so as to get hold of the blanket, hanging below. Then he let himself down by the blanket until he reached the corner nearest

to the ground. From this he dropped, without injury, on the berme; and within the chevaux-de frise, which lay on the berme. Leaving his blanket suspended from the fraying, he crept into the chevaux-de-frise, nearest to the spot, where he had descended; and moved softly along to the next angle. Here he remained without noise or motion, until the relief, having gone round the walls, and out of the gate, to relieve the sentinels without the abattis, should have passed by. As soon as he had heard them pass, and before the sentinels had become accustomed to noises around them, he crept softly down into the ditch; went out at the water course, between the sentry boxes; and descended the declivity of the hill, on which the fort stood, into the open field. Finding himself fairly without the fort, and without the line of sentries, and perceiving no evidence that he had been discovered, he could scarcely persuade himself, that the whole adventure was not a dream; from which he might soon awake, and find himself still in his prison.

• Both the rain and the darkness continued. He groped his way, therefore, among rocks, stumps, and brush, very leisurely, to an old guard-house on the shore of the back cove. This building had been agreed upon between the prisoners as their place of rendezvous, if any accident should separate them. After searching, and waiting, for his companion half an hour in vain, he proceeded onward to the cove. The time was happily that of low water. Here he drew off his shoes and stockings; took his hat from the skirt of his coat, to which hitherto it had been pinned; girded up his clothes; and began to cross the water, which was about a mile in breadth. Fortunately he found it no where more than three feet in depth. Having safely arrived at the opposite shore, and put on his stockings and shoes, he

found the rain beginning to abate, and the sky becoming less dark. Still he saw nothing of his companion.

‘It was now about two o’clock in the morning. General Wadsworth had left the fort a mile and a half behind him, and had perceived no noise which indicated that the enemy had discovered his escape. His own proper course now lay, for about a mile, up a very gently sloping acclivity; on the summit of which was a road, formerly cut under his direction, for the purpose of moving heavy cannon. The whole ascent was overspread with trees blown down by the wind; and to gain the summit cost him the labor of at least an hour. At length he reached the road; but after keeping it about half a mile, determined to betake himself to the woods, and make his way through them to the river. Here the day dawned; and the rain abated. Here also he heard the reveille beat at the fort. He reached the eastern shore of the Penobscot, just below the lower Narrows, at sunrise, and found a small canoe at the very spot where he first came to the river. But he was afraid to cross it in this place, lest the inhabitants on the opposite shore, through fear of the enemy, or hostility to him, should carry him back to the fort; or lest their kindness, if they should be disposed to befriend him, should prove their ruin. He, therefore, made the best of his way up the river, at the foot of the bank, and kept as near as he could to the water’s edge, that the flood tide, which was now running, might cover his steps, and prevent his course from being pursued by blood-hounds, kept at the fort. In this manner, also, he escaped the notice of the inhabitants, living on the eastern bank of the river.

‘About seven o’clock in the morning the sun began to shine, and the sky became clear. At this time he had reached a place, just below the upper Narrows, seven miles from the fort. Here it was necessary for him to cross

the river. At a small distance he perceived a salmon net stretched from a point, thickly covered with bushes, and a canoe lying on the shore. He therefore determined, after having cut a stout club, to lie by in the thicket, in order to rest himself, dry his clothes, and discover the persons who should come to take fish from the net; that he might decide on the safety or danger of making himself known. In this situation, he had spent near an hour, and made considerable progress in drying his clothes; not, however, without frequently looking down the river to see whether his enemies were pursuing him; when to his unspeakable joy he saw his friend Burton advancing towards him in the track, which he had himself taken. The meeting was mutually rapturous; and the more so, as each believed the other to have been lost.

Major Burton, after having passed through the hole in the ceiling, made his way directly into the second entry without interruption. As he had been able to escape from the ceiling, only by the assistance of General Wadsworth, he concluded, early, that his friend would be unable to make his way through the same passage, and rationally determining it to be better, that one should regain his liberty than that both should be confined in a British jail, made no stop to learn what had become of his companion. Passing out of the eastern door, (the same which Gen. Wadsworth had selected,) he entered the area of the fort, taking the most watchful care to avoid the sentry-boxes. The night was so intensely dark, that this was a matter of no small difficulty. Fortunately, however, he avoided them all; and steered his course, providentially, to the north-eastern curtain. At the moment of his arrival the door of the guard-house was thrown open, and the relief ordered to turn out. Burton heard the orders indistinctly, and supposed that himself, or General Wadsworth, (if he had been able to

make his way out of the barrack,) was discovered. He leaped therefore from the wall, and fell into the arms of a chevaux-frise, containing only four sets of pickets. Had there been six, as is sometimes the case, he must have fallen upon the points of some of them, and been killed outright. Perceiving that he was not injured by the fall, he flung himself into the ditch; and passing through the abattis, escaped into the open ground. As he had no doubt, that either himself or General Wadsworth was discovered, and knew that in either case he should be closely pursued, he used the utmost expedition.

‘ It had been agreed by the prisoners, that if they should get out of the fort, and in this enterprise should be separated from each other, they should direct their course by the wind. Unfortunately, the gale, which in the afternoon and early part of the evening, had blown from the south, shifted, without being observed by Burton, to the east. Of the region round about him, except so far as General Wadsworth had described it to him, he was absolutely ignorant. In these unfortunate circumstances, instead of taking the direction which he had intended, he pointed his course towards a piquet-guard kept near the isthmus; and came almost upon a sentinel, before he discovered his danger. Happily, however, he perceived a man at a small distance in motion, and dropped softly upon the ground. [Major Burton dropped a glove in this spot, which being found in the morning, discovered thus far the course which he had pursued in making his escape.] The movements of the man soon convinced Burton that he was a sentinel, and that he belonged to the piquet. By various means the two friends had made themselves acquainted with the whole routine of the duty, performed by the garrison. Burton, therefore, from these circumstances discerned in a moment where he was, and determined to avail himself of the dis-

covery. Accordingly, whenever the sentinel moved from him, he softly withdrew; and at length got clear of his disagreeable neighbor. He then entered the water on the side of the isthmus next to the river, with the hope of being able to advance in it so far above the picket, as to land again undiscovered. The undertaking proved very hazardous, as well as very difficult. It was the time of low water. The rocks were numerous in his course; and the river between them was deep. A great quantity of sea-weed also encumbered his progress. He swam, and climbed, and waded, alternately, for the space of an hour; and having made in this manner a circuit, which, though small, he thought would be sufficient to avoid the guard, betook himself to the shore. Here, chilled with this long continued cold bathing, and excessively wearied by exertion, he began his course through the forest; directing himself, as well as he could, towards the path, which had been taken by General Wadsworth. After walking several miles through the same obstructions which had so much embarrassed his friend, he reached it, and without any further trouble rejoined the General.

After their mutual congratulations, the two friends, as they saw no persons appear, went down to the canoe; and finding in it a suit of oars, pushed it into the water. Burton informed General Wadsworth, that a party of the enemy was in pursuit of them, and that their barge would soon come round the point below; and therefore proposed, that instead of crossing the river directly, they should take an oblique course, by which they might avoid being discovered. Not long after the barge came in sight, moving moderately up the river, and distant from them about a mile. At this time the canoe was near half a mile from the eastern shore; but, being hidden by some bushes on another point, escaped the eyes of their pursuers. Just at the mo-

ment the crew of the barge, having rested for a minute on their oars, tacked, and rowed to the eastern shore; when one of the men went up to a house standing on the bank. The two friends seeing this, plied their oars to the utmost; and when the barge put off again, had it in their power to reach the western shore without any possible obstruction.

‘As they approached a landing place, they saw a number of people. To avoid an interview with these strangers, they changed their course, and landed on the north side of a creek, where they were entirely out of their reach, and safe from their suspicion.

‘After they had made fast the canoe, they steered their course directly into the wilderness; leaving the barge advancing up the river, but appearing to have made no discovery. The prospect of a final escape was now very hopeful; but as there could be no safety in keeping the route along the shore, since they undoubtedly would be way-laid in many places, they determined to take a direct course through the forests, to avoid inhabitants, and prevent a pursuit. Accordingly, they steered towards the head of St. George’s river. This they were enabled to do by the aid of a pocket compass, which Burton had fortunately retained in his possession. Their pockets supplied them with provisions, homely enough, indeed, but such as satisfied hunger, and such as success rendered delightful. Two showers fell upon them in the course of the day; and the heat of the sun was at times intense. Their passage, also, was often incommoded by the usual obstructions of an American forest; fallen trees, marshy grounds, and other inconveniences of the like nature. But, with all these difficulties, they traveled twenty-five miles by sunset.

‘At the approach of night, they made a fire with the aid of a flint, which Major Burton had in his pocket, and some punk, a substance formed by a partial decomposition of the

heart of the maple tree; which easily catches, and long retains, even the slightest spark. But, as they had no axe, and as they did not commence this business sufficiently early, the wood of which their fire was made, being of a bad quality, burnt ill; and was extinguished long before the morning arrived. The night was cold, notwithstanding the heat of the preceding day. Both extremes were equally injurious to the travelers; and increased not a little the lameness and soreness of their limbs. General Wadsworth suffered severely. He had been a long time in confinement, and had of course been prevented from taking any vigorous exercise. He was also possessed of a constitution, much less firm than that of his companion; and was much less accustomed to the hardships of traveling in a forest. For these reasons they made a slow progress, during the morning of the second day. By degrees, however, the General began to recover strength, and before evening they advanced, though not without much difficulty, twelve or fifteen miles. The sufferings of the preceding night effectually warned them to begin the employment of collecting fuel in better season. They had, therefore, a comfortable fire. Still, the latter part of the night was very cold and distressing.

‘On the third day General Wadsworth was so lame, and had suffered so much from this uncomfortable pilgrimage, that he was able to make very little progress. After many efforts, he proposed to stop in the wilderness, and wait for such relief, as his friend, proceeding onward to the nearest settlements, might be able to bring him. Major Burton cut the matter short by an absolute refusal to leave him behind, in circumstances so hazardous. At length they determined to refresh themselves with a little sleep, and then to re-commence their progress. This determination was a happy one; for they found their sleep, in the genial

warmth of the day, in a high degree restorative and invigorating. They were able to travel with more and more ease; and were not a little animated with a consciousness, that their pilgrimage was drawing towards a close. About six, P. M., they discovered from an eminence the ascent of a smoke, and other signs of human habitations; and soon, to their unspeakable joy, arrived at the place to which they had originally directed their course,—the Upper Settlements on the river St. George.

‘The inhabitants flocked about them with a joy scarcely inferior to theirs; and not only hailed them as friends long lost, but as men dropped from the clouds. Their surprise and their affection were equally intense; and their minds labored for modes, in which they might exhibit sufficient kindness to their guests.

‘At this friendly place they took horses, and accompanied by all the inhabitants, who were able to bear arms, proceeded down the river, within three miles of the house, in which General Wadsworth had been taken prisoner. Here they crossed the river, and took up their lodging on the other side in a very comfortable inn. Their company had by this time increased to thirty men. Half of this force General Wadsworth gave to his faithful friend, who was then distant only three miles from his own house; a stone fort, anciently erected as a defence against the savages. It was naturally suspected by both gentlemen, that concealed parties of the enemy would lie in wait for them; and, if possible, carry them back again to their prison. Nor was the suspicion unfounded. Such a party actually way-laid Major Burton upon his return to his family; and had he not been accompanied by this body of armed men, he would again have been taken. Finding themselves frustrated, the lurking party seized a trading vessel, lying in St.

George's river, and returning to Bagaduce carried the first information to the fort concerning the prisoners.

As to General Wadsworth, he was now in a settlement where he could not be attacked with any hope of success, unless by a strong detachment of the enemy. He therefore continued at this hospitable inn until the next day but one. Then, having recovered one of his horses, and renewed his strength and spirits, he set out for Falmouth, (Portland,) where he hoped to find Mrs. Wadsworth. During the first day's journey he was accompanied by a small guard. From this time he was safe from the lurking parties of the enemy; and proceeded to Falmouth as his own convenience permitted.

Mrs. Wadsworth and Miss Fenno had, however, sailed for Boston before his arrival. On their passage they were overtaken by a violent storm, and barely escaped shipwreck. The vessel put into Portsmouth in distress; and neither of the ladies was acquainted with a single inhabitant. They took lodgings, therefore, at an inn. When they had in some measure recovered themselves from the anxiety and distress, produced by the perilous situation from which they had just escaped, they found themselves in a new scene of trouble. Mrs. Wadsworth had left all the specie in her possession with the General, when she visited him at Penobscot; and during her residence in the district of Maine, the Continental bills of credit had lost their currency. She was, therefore, without money, and without any known friends. After meditating for some time on various expedients to extricate herself and her friend from this embarrassment, not a little perplexing to a female mind, she recollects that she had seen at New Haven in the year 1770, Mr. Buckminster, then a tutor in Yale College, and now one of the ministers of Portsmouth.

‘From this gentleman the ladies, after having made him acquainted with their circumstances, received every assistance which they could wish. When they were ready to proceed on their journey, he furnished a carriage to convey them to Newburyport. Here they met with the same friendly offices, and were supplied with the means of proceeding pleasantly to Boston; where the distresses of both Mrs. Wadsworth and the General were speedily terminated by his arrival.’

---

### SECTION XXXV.

#### FURTHER EVENTS OF THE CAMPAIGN.—PREPARATIONS FOR THE SIEGE OF NEW YORK.

It has already been related that, after defeating General Greene at Guildford, Lord Cornwallis marched to Pittsburgh, in Virginia. His lordship did not take this step without hesitation. He well knew the enterprising character of his opponent, and was aware of the probability of his making an incursion into South Carolina. He flattered himself, however, that the forces which he had left in that province, under the command of Lord Rawdon would suffice to keep the enemy in check. In this idea he was confirmed by the result of the battle of Camden, and by the receipt of intelligence that three British regiments, which had sailed from Cork, might be expected speedily to arrive at Charleston. No longer anxious, therefore, for the fate of South Carolina, he determined to march forward, in the confident hope of increasing his military renown by the

---

Where was Cornwallis at this time?

How did he flatter himself?

In this idea how was he confirmed?

What did he determine?

conquest of Virginia. He accordingly advanced with rapidity from Petersburgh to Manchester, on James river, with a view of crossing over from that place to Richmond, for the purpose of seizing a large quantity of stores and provisions, which had been deposited there by the Americans. But on his arrival at Manchester, he had the mortification to find that, on the day before, this depot had been removed by the Marquis de Lafayette, who, at the command of congress, had hastened from the head of Elk to oppose him. Having crossed James river, at Westown, his lordship marched through Hanover county to the South Anna river, followed at a guarded distance by the marquis, who, in this critical contingency, finding his forces inferior to those of the enemy, wisely restrained the vivacity which is the usual characteristic of his age and country. But having effected a junction with General Wayne, which brought his numbers nearly to an equality with those of the British, and having once more, by a skilful maneuver, saved his stores, which had been removed to Albemarle old court house, he displayed so bold a front, that the British commander fell back to Richmond, and thence to Williamsburgh. On his arrival at the latter place, Lord Cornwallis received despatches from Sir Henry Clinton, requiring him instantly to send from his army a detachment to the relief of New York, which was threatened with a com-

---

Why did he proceed to Manchester?

How was he disappointed?

Whither then did he go?

By whom was he followed?

What did the marquis wisely do?

By whom was the marquis joined?

What was his situation now?

By a skilful maneuver what had he done?

Why did Cornwallis fall back to Williamsburgh?

What despatches did he there receive?

bined attack by the French and the Americans. The consequent diminution of his force induced his lordship to cross James river, and to march in the direction of Portsmouth. Before, however, the reinforcements destined for New York had sailed, he received counter-orders and instructions from Sir Henry Clinton, in pursuance of which he conveyed his army, amounting to 7000 men, to Yorktown, which place he proceeded to fortify with the utmost skill and industry.

The object of Lord Cornwallis in thus posting himself at Yorktown, was to co-operate in the subjugation of Virginia with a fleet which he was led to expect would about this time proceed from the West Indies to the Chesapeake. Whilst his lordship was anxiously looking out for the British penants, he had the mortification, on the 30th of August, to see the Count de Grasse sailing up the bay with twenty-eight sail of the line, three of which, accompanied by a proper number of frigates, were immediately despatched to block up York river. The French vessels had no sooner anchored, than they landed a force of 3200 men, who, under the command of the Marquis de St. Simon, effected a junction with the army of Lafayette, and took post at Williamsburg. Soon after this operation, the hopes of the British were revived by the appearance off the Capes of Virginia, of Admiral Graves, with twenty sail of the line—a force which seemed to be competent to extricate Lord

---

What other orders did Lord Cornwallis receive?

Whither then did he go?

What did he there do?

What was the number of his army?

What was his object in so doing?

What occurred on the 30th of August?

What was the force which the French landed?

Under whose command were they?

Where did Lafayette and the French force take post?

What occurred soon after this?

Cornwallis from his difficult position. These hopes, however, proved delusive. On the 7th of September, M. de Grasse encountered the British fleet, and a distant fight took place, in which the French seemed to rely more on their maneuvering than on their valor. The reason of this was soon apparent. In the course of the night which followed the action, a squadron of eight line-of-battle ships safely passed the British, and joined De Grasse, in consequence of which accession of strength to the enemy, Admiral Graves thought it prudent to quit that part of the coast, and retire to New York. This impediment to their operations having been removed, the Americans and French directed the whole of their united efforts to the capture of Yorktown.

This had not, however, been the original design of General Washington at the commencement of the campaign. Early in the spring he had agreed with Count Rochambeau to lay siege to New York, in concert with a French fleet which was expected to reach the neighborhood of Staten Island in the month of August. He had accordingly issued orders for considerable reinforcements, especially of militia, to join his army in proper time to commence the projected operations. The French troops under Rochambeau having arrived punctually at his encampment near Peekskill, General Washington advanced to King's Bridge, and hemmed in the British in York Island. Every preparation seemed to be now in forwardness for the commencement of the siege; but the militia came in tardily. The adjacent States were dilatory in sending in their quotas of troops; and whilst he was impatiently awaiting their arrival Washington had the mortification to receive intelligence that

---

In what way did the hopes of Lord Cornwallis prove delusive?

To what did the Americans and French direct their whole force?

Was this Washington's original design? What was?

Clinton had received a reinforcement of 3000 Germans.— Whilst his mind was agitated by disappointment, and chagrined by that want of zeal on the part of the middle States which he apprehended could not but bring discredit on his country, in the estimation of his allies, he was relieved from his distress by the news of the success of Greene in driving Lord Cornwallis into Yorktown; and at the same time learning that the destination of Count de Grasse was the Chesapeake, and not Staten Island, he resolved to transfer his operations to the State of Virginia. Still, however, he kept up an appearance of persevering in his original intention of making an attack upon New York, and in this feint he was aided by the circumstance, that when this was in reality his design, a letter, in which he had detailed his plans for its prosecution, had been intercepted, and read by Sir Henry Clinton. When, therefore, in the latter end of August, he broke up his encampment at Peekskill, and directed his march to the south, the British commander, imagining that this movement was only a stratagem calculated to throw him off his guard, and that the enemy would speedily return to take advantage of his expected negligence, remained in his quarters, and redoubled his exertions to strengthen his position. In consequence of this error, he lost the opportunity of impeding the march of the allied army, and of availing himself of the occasions which might have presented themselves of bringing it to action before it could effect a junction with the troops already assembled in the vicinity of Yorktown. Thus marching onwards without molestation, General Washing-

---

What brought about this state of things?

What appearance did he still keep up?

How was he aided in this?

What did Clinton imagine when Washington left Peekskill?

What did he lose by this error?

ton reached Williamsburg on the 14th of September, and immediately on his arrival, visiting the Count de Grasse on board his flagship, the Ville de Paris, settled with him the plan of their future operations.

---

## SECTION XXXVI.

### SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.—SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS.

In pursuance of this arrangement, the combined forces, to the amount of 12,000 men, assembled at Williamsburg, on the 25th of September; and on the 30th of the same month marched forward to invest Yorktown, whilst the French fleet, moving to the mouth of York river, cut off Lord Cornwallis from any communication with a friendly force by water. His lordship's garrison amounted to 7000 men, and the place was strongly fortified. On the right it was secured by a marshy ravine, extending to such a distance along the front of the defences as to leave them accessible only to the extent of about 1500 yards. This space was defended by strong lines, beyond which, on the extreme left, were advanced a redoubt and a bastion, which enfiladed their approach to Gloucester Point, on the other side of York river, the channel of which is here narrowed to the breadth of a mile, which post was also sufficiently garrisoned, and strongly fortified. Thus secured in his position, Lord Cornwallis beheld the approach of the enemy

---

**When did Washington reach Williamsburg?**

**What did he do immediately on his arrival?**

**What was settled?**

**To what number did the combined forces amount?**

**What did Washington do?      What the fleet?**

**What did the garrison of Lord Cornwallis amount to?**

**How was the town fortified?**

with firmness, especially as he had received despatches from Sir Henry Clinton, announcing his intention of sending 5000 men in a fleet of 23 ships of the line to his relief.

The allied forces on their arrival from Williamsburg immediately commenced the investiture both of Yorktown and of Gloucester Point; and on the 10th of October they opened their batteries with such effect, that their shells, flying over the town, reached the shipping in the harbor, and set fire to the *Charon* frigate, and to a transport. On this inauspicious day, too, Lord Cornwallis received a communication from Sir Henry Clinton, conveying to him the unwelcome intelligence that he doubted whether it would be in his power to send him the aid which he had promised.

On the following morning the enemy commenced their second parallel, and finding themselves, in this advanced position, severely annoyed by the bastion and redoubt which have been mentioned above, they resolved to storm them. The reduction of the former of these works was committed to the French, whilst the attack of the latter was intrusted to the Americans.\* Both parties rushing to the

\* The Marquis de Lafayette commanded the American detachment of light infantry, against the redoubt on the extreme left of the British works; and the Baron de Viominel led the French grenadiers and chasseurs against the other, which was farther toward the British right, and nearer the French lines. On the evening of the 14th, the two detachments moved firmly to the assault.—Colonel Hamilton led the advanced corps of the Americans; and Colonel Laurens, at the head of 80 men, turned the redoubt, in order to take the garrison in reverse, and intercept their retreat. The troops rushed to the assault with unloaded arms, and in a few minutes carried the redoubt with inconsiderable

---

How did Cornwallis behold their approach?

When were the batteries opened?

What intelligence did Lord Cornwallis receive?

On the following day what was commenced?

Describe the assault made on the next morning,

assault with the spirit of emulation which this arrangement was calculated to inspire, the works in question were speedily carried at the point of the bayonet.

It must be mentioned to the honor of the American soldiers, that though in revenge for a massacre recently committed at New London, in Connecticut, by a body of troops under the command of the renegade Arnold,\* they had been

loss.<sup>1</sup> The French were also successful. The reboult assigned to them was soon carried, but with less rapidity and greater loss.<sup>2</sup> These two redoubts were included the same night in the second parallel, and facilitated the subsequent operations of the besiegers.

\* Sir Henry Clinton "giving to the traitor Arnold, who had just returned from Virginia, the command of a strong detachment, he sent him against New-London, a flourishing city situated upon the river Thames, in his native state. Nearly opposite, on a hill in Groton, stood Fort Griswold, which was then garrisoned by militia, hastily summoned from their labors in the field. Against this fort Arnold despatched a part of his troops. It was assaulted on three sides at the same moment. The garrison, fighting in view of their property and their homes, made a brave and obstinate resistance. By their steady and well directed fire, many of the assailants were killed. Pressing forward with persevering ardor, the enemy entered the fort through the embrasures. Immediately all resistance ceased. Irritated by gallantry which should have caused admiration, a British officer inquired who commanded the fort. 'I did,' said Colonel Ledyard, 'but you do now,' and presented him his sword. He seized it, and with savage cruelty plunged it into his bosom. This was the signal for an indiscriminate massacre. Of one hundred and sixty men, composing the garrison, all but forty were killed or wounded, and most of them after resistance had ceased. Seldom has the glory of victory been tarnished by such detestable barbarity. The enemy then entered New-London, which was set on fire and consumed. The property destroyed was of immense value. Perceiving no other object within the reach of his force, Arnold led back his troops to New-York."

<sup>1</sup> One sergeant and 3 privates were killed; and 1 lieutenant-colonel, 4 captains, 1 subaltern, 1 sergeant, and 25 rank and file, wounded. There was no retaliation of the recent carnage at Fort Griswold. The assailants killed not a man, except in action. "Incapable of imitating examples of barbarity, and forgetting recent provocation, the soldiery spared every man that ceased to resist."

<sup>2</sup> The loss, in killed and wounded, was nearly 100 men.

ordered to take no prisoners, they forebore to comply with this requisition, and when they had penetrated into the redoubt, spared every man who ceased to resist. On the 16th of October, a sally was made from the garrison, but with indifferent success; and Lord Cornwallis was now convinced that he could avoid a surrender, only by effecting his escape by Gloucester Point. Seeing himself therefore reduced to the necessity of trying this desperate expedient, he prepared as many boats as he could procure, and on the night of the 16th of October attempted to convey his army over York river to the opposite promontory. But the elements were adverse to his operations. The first division of his troops was disembarked in safety; but when the second was on its passage, a storm of wind and rain arose, and drove it down the river.

Though this second embarkation worked its way back to Yorktown on the morning of the 17th, Lord Cornwallis was convinced, however unwillingly, that protracted resistance was vain.\* No aid appeared from New York—his

\* ..On the morning of the 17th, several new batteries were opened in the second parallel; and, in the judgment of Lord Cornwallis, as well as of his engineers, the place was no longer tenable. About ten in the forenoon, his lordship, in a letter to General Washington, requested that there might be a cessation of hostilities for 24 hours, and that commissioners might be appointed to digest terms of capitulation. The American general in his answer declared his ..ardent desire to spare the farther effusion of blood, and his readiness to listen to such terms as were admissible;” and granted a suspension of hostilities for two hours. The general propositions, stated by Lord Cornwallis for the basis of the proposed negotiation, being such as to lead to an opinion that the terms of capitulation might without much difficulty be adjusted, the suspension of hostilities was prolonged through the night. Commissioners were appointed the next day to digest into form, such articles as General Washington had drawn up and proposed to Lord Cornwallis; and early the next morning the American general sent

---

On the 16th what was done?

What desperate expedient was Cornwallis reduced to?

What was the result?

works were ruined—the fire from the enemy's batteries swept the town; and sickness had diminished the effective force of the garrison. In these painful circumstances, noth-

them to his lordship with a letter, expressing his expectation, that they would be signed by eleven, and that the garrison would march out by two in the afternoon. Lord Cornwallis, submitting to a necessity absolutely inevitable, surrendered the posts of Yorktown and Gloucester Point with the garrison, and the shipping in the harbor with the seamen, to the land and naval officers of America and France. By the articles of capitulation, the officers were to retain their side arms and private property. The soldiers, accompanied by a due proportion of officers, were to remain in Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania; and the officers, not required for this service, were to be allowed to go on parole to Europe, or to any maritime port, occupied by the English in America. The whole army merited great approbation; but the artillerists and engineers received the highest applause. Generals Du Portail and Knox were each promoted to the rank of major-general; Lieutenant-Colonel Gouyon and Captain Rochefontaine were each advanced a grade by brevet. Generals Lincoln, de Lafayette, and Steuben, were particularly mentioned by the commander-in-chief in his orders the day after the capitulation; and Governor Nelson, who remained in the field during the siege, at the head of the militia of Virginia, and who exerted himself to furnish the army with supplies, was very honorably mentioned. The Count de Rochambeau received the highest acknowledgments; and several other French officers were named with distinction. Congress, on receiving intelligence of this important victory, passed resolutions, returning the thanks of the United States to the commander-in-chief, to the Count de Rochambeau, to the Count de Grasse, and to the officers of the different corps, and the men under them. It was also resolved, that a marble column should be erected at Yorktown with emblems of the alliance between the United States and his most Christian majesty, and inscribed with a succinct narrative of the surrender of the Earl Cornwallis. Washington, on this very joyful occasion, ordered that those who were under arrest, should be pardoned and set at liberty, and closed his orders in the following pious and impressive manner: "Divine service shall be performed to-morrow in the different brigades and divisions. The commander-in-chief recommends, that all the troops that are not upon duty do assist at it with a serious deportment, and that sensibility of heart, which the recollection of the surprising and particular interposition of divine Providence in our favor claims." 1 Congress resolved to go in solemn procession to the Dutch Lutheran Church, to return thanks to Almighty God for crowning the allied arms with success; and issued a proclamation, appointing the 13th day of

---

Describe his situation on the 17th.

ing remained for him but to negotiate terms of capitulation. He accordingly sent a flag of truce, and having agreed to give up his troops as prisoners of war to Congress, and the naval force to France, he, on the 19th of October, marched out of his lines with folded colors; and proceeding to a field at a short distance from the town, he surrendered to General Lincoln, with the same formalities which had been prescribed to that officer at Charleston, eighteen months before.\* Another coincidence was remarked on this occasion. The capitulation under which Lord Cornwallis surrendered was drawn up by Lieutenant-Colonel Laurens, whose father had filled the office of President of Congress, and having been taken prisoner when on his voyage to

December "as a day of general thanksgiving and prayer, on account of this signal interposition of divine Providence."<sup>1</sup>

1 "The piety of a conqueror forms an immortal wreath, which will flourish when the laurel shall have withered. Timoleon, in reply to the eulogiums lavished on him by the Syracusans, said, "The gods had decreed to save Sicily: I thank them that they chose me to be the instrument of their goodness." Washington, with similar but more enlightened piety, uniformly ascribed his successes, and every propitious event, to the divine agency. In August, 1778, he remarked: "It is not a little pleasing, nor less wonderful to contemplate, that after two years maneuvering and undergoing the strangest vicissitudes, that perhaps ever attended any one contest since the creation, both armies are brought back to the very point they set out from, and the offending party in the beginning is now reduced to the use of the spade and pickaxe for defence. The hand of Providence has been so conspicuous in all this, that he must be worse than an infidel, who lacks faith, and more than wicked, who has not gratitude enough to acknowledge his obligations." In the case of Arnold's treachery, he observed; "In no instance since the commencement of the war, has the interposition of Providence appeared more remarkably conspicuous, than in the rescue of the post and garrison of West Point."

\* "The army, with the artillery, arms, accoutrements, military chest, and all public stores, were surrendered to General Washington; the ships and seamen.

What did he next do?

What were the terms of surrender?

By whom were they drawn up? What of his father?

Describe the circumstances of the surrender?

Holland, in quality of ambassador from the United States to the Dutch republic, had been consigned, under a charge of high treason, to a rigorous custody in the Tower of London, of which fortress his lordship was constable.

Had Lord Cornwallis been able to hold out five days longer than he did, he might possibly have been relieved; for on the 24th of October, a British fleet, conveying an army of 7000 men, arrived off the Chesapeake; but finding that his lordship had already surrendered, this armament returned to New York and Sandy Hook.

## SECTION XXXVII.

### PROVISIONAL TREATY OF PEACE, 30TH OF NOVEMBER, 1782.

It was with reason that the Congress passed a vote of thanks to the captors of Yorktown, and that they went in procession, on the 24th of October, to celebrate the triumph of their arms, by expressing, in the solemnities of a reli-

to the count de Grasse. The prisoners, exclusive of seamen, amounted to 7073; of which number 5950 were rank and file.

Garrison of York	3273	Sick and wounded	1933
“ Gloucester	744		4017
Fit for duty			5950

To the 7073 prisoners are to be added 6 commissioned and 28 non-commissioned officers and privates, taken prisoners in the two redoubts, and in the sortie made by the garrison. The loss sustained by the garrison during the siege, in killed, wounded, and missing, amounted to 552. The loss of the combined army, in killed, was about 300.—The allied army, to which that of Lord Cornwallis surrendered, has been estimated at 16000 men. The French amounted to 7000, the continental troops, to about 5500; and the militia, to about 3500.”

Who was constable of the Tower of London?

What armament appeared on the 24th?

What was done by Congress on the 24th October?

gious service, their gratitude to Almighty God for this signal success. The surrender of Lord Cornwallis was the virtual termination of the war. From this time forward, to the signature of the treaty of peace, the British were cooped up in New York, Charleston, and Savannah.\* From these posts they now and then, indeed, made excursions for

\* "The military events of this year were inconsiderable. Captain Rudolph and Lieutenant Smith with 12 men, on the 19th of March, took a British galley in Ashley river, mounting 12 guns beside swivels, and manned with 43 seamen. Rudolph did not lose a man. After taking out such stores as he found on board the galley, he burned her, and returned to his place of embarkation. After the reduction of Lord Cornwallis, the Pennsylvania line marched to South Carolina, and this increase of force enabled General Greene to detach General Wayne with part of his army to Georgia. On the 21st of May, Colonel Brown having marched out in force from Savannah, General Wayne, rapidly advancing from Ebenezer, got between him and the British garrison in Savannah; attacked him at twelve o'clock at night; and routed his whole party. This action was fought about four miles to the southwest of Savannah, on the Ogeechee road. The van guard of the Americans, consisting of 60 horse and 40 infantry, was led on by Colonel White of the cavalry, and Captain Parker of the infantry, to a spirited charge, in which 40 of the enemy were killed or wounded, and about 20 taken prisoners. This advantage was gained by the use of the sword and bayonet. The Americans had only 5 privates killed, and 2 wounded.

On the 24th of June, General Wayne was violently attacked, at a plantation about five miles from Savannah, by a large body of Creek Indians, who at first drove his troops, and took two pieces of artillery; but they were soon charged with great spirit, and completely routed. It was a smart action, in which they fought hand to hand with tomahawks, swords, and bayonets; 14 Indians and 2 white men were killed. Emistessigo, a famous Indian chief was among the slain. The royalists, coming out from Savannah to join the Indians, were driven back by General Wayne; who took one British standard, and 127 horses with 4000 slaves. Of the continentals, five were killed, and eight wounded. In July, the British evacuated Savannah; and General Wayne soon after took possession of it. Peace was restored to Georgia, after having been four years in possession of the British. That state is supposed to have lost 1000 of its citizens, and 4000 slaves.

A large party of the British being sent to Combahee ferry to collect provi-

---

What places only did the British now hold?

From these posts what did they occasionally do?

the purpose of foraging and plunder; but being utterly unable to appear in force in the interior of the country, they found themselves incompetent to carry on any operations calculated to promote the main object of the war,—the subjugation of the United States. Perseverance, however, still seemed a virtue to the British cabinet. Immediately after the arrival of the intelligence of the capture by the Americans of a second British army, George III., declared, in a speech to parliament, 'that he should not answer the trust committed to the sovereign of a free people, if he consented to sacrifice, either to his own desire of peace, or to their temporary ease and relief, those essential rights and permanent interests, upon the maintenance and preservation of which the future strength and security of

sions, Brigadier General Gist was detached with about 300 infantry and cavalry to oppose them. He captured one of their schooners, and in a great measure frustrated their design. When the two parties were near each other, Lieutenant Colonel Laurens, who was in advance with a small party, fell in with a superior force, and while engaged with it, he received a mortal wound, and died in the field. Soon after, Captain Wilmot made an attack upon a party of British on James Island, near Fort Johnson; the captain and some of his men were killed, and the rest retreated. This was the last blood-shed in the American war.

General Leslie with the loyalists evacuated South Carolina on the 14th of December, and on the 17th General Wayne with 5000 continental troops took possession of Charleston.

On the departure of the British from Charleston, upwards of 800 slaves, who had been employed in the engineer department, were shipped off for the West Indies. It has been computed, that, during the war, the state of South Carolina was deprived of 25,000 negroes.

General Moultrie, at the conclusion of his Memoirs, pays an honorable tribute to the ladies of South Carolina and Georgia, "for their heroism in those dreadful and dangerous times whilst we were struggling for our liberties;" and says, "that their conduct, during the war, contributed much to the independence of America."

---

What seemed still virtue in the British Cabinet?

What did the King declare in his speech?

the country must for ever depend.' When called upon in the House of Commons for an explanation of this vague and assuming language, Lord North avowed that it was the intention of ministers to carry on in North America 'a war of posts;' and such was, at that moment,\* the state of the house, that, in despite of the eloquence of Mr. Fox, who labored to demonstrate the absurdity of this new plan, a majority of 218 to 129 concurred in an address which was an echo of his Majesty's speech. But the loud murmurs of the people, groaning beneath the weight of taxation, and indignant under a sense of national misrule, at length penetrated the walls of the senate-house. Early in the year 1782, motion after motion was made in the House of Commons, expressive of the general wish for the termination of hostilities with the United States. The minister held out with obstinacy, though on each renewal of the debate, he saw his majority diminish; till at length, on the 27th of February, on a motion of General Conway, expressly directed against the further prosecution of offensive war on the continent of North America, he was left in a minority of nineteen. This victory was followed up by an address from the house to his Majesty, according to the tenor of General Conway's motion. To this address so equivocal an answer was returned by the crown, that the friends of pacification deemed it necessary to speak in still plainer terms; and on the 4th of March, the House of Commons declared, that whosoever should advise his Majesty to any further prosecution of offensive war against the colonies of

\* Nov. 27th, 1781.

What was the new plan, in the House of Commons?

What motions were made in the House of Commons?

By whom were loud murmurs made? On what account?

What motion was made on Feb. 27th? By whom?

How did this motion succeed?

By what was it followed?

What was declared on the 4th of March?

North America should be considered as a public enemy. This was the deathblow to Lord North's administration. His lordship retired from office early in the month of March, and was succeeded by the Marquis of Rockingham, the efforts of whose ministry were as much and as cordially directed to peace as those of Lord Shelburne's. On the death of the Marquis, which took place soon after he had assumed the reins of government, the Earl of Shelburne was called on to preside over his Majesty's councils, which, under his auspices, were directed to the great object of pacification. To this all the parties interested were well inclined. The English nation was weary of a civil war in which it had sustained so many discomfitures. The king of France, who had reluctantly consented to aid the infant Republic of North America, was mortified by the destruction of the fleet of De Grasse, in the West Indies,\* and found the expenses of the war press heavily on his finan-

\* "The British fleet in the West Indies, under admiral Sir George B. Rodney, on the 12th of April gained a complete victory over the French fleet under the count de Grasse. The count fought on board the Ville de Paris to desperation, until he and two others were the only men left standing on the upper deck, when he consented to strike. This magnificent ship was the pride and glory of the French marine. It had been presented to Louis XV., by his capital, at the time of the war of Canada, and had cost four million of livres. By this defeat and capture there fell into the hands of the English 36 chests of money, and the whole train of artillery intended for the attack on Jamaica." 1.

1 Botta, History American War, b. 14. "The French for near a century had not in any naval engagement been so completely worsted. Their fleet was little less than ruined." The number of their killed and wounded amounted to several thousands; the loss of the British did not much exceed 1100." Ramsay. "Congress, at a subsequent period, testified their respect to the memory of

---

To what was this a death-blow?

Who succeeded Lord North?

What was the character of his administration?

On the death of the Marquis, who took his place?

To what were all the parties inclined?

What is said of the King of France? Spain? Dutch?

ces. The Spaniards were disheartened by the failure of their efforts to repossess themselves of Gibraltar; and the Dutch were impatient under the suspension of their commerce. Such being the feelings of the belligerents, the negotiations for a peace between Great Britain and the United States were opened at Paris, by Mr. Fitzherbert and Mr. Oswald on the part of the former power, and by John Adams, Doctor Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, on behalf of the latter. These negotiations terminated in provisional articles of peace, which were signed on the 30th of November, 1782.\* By this important instrument, the independence of the thirteen provinces was unreservedly acknowledged by his Britannic Majesty, who moreover conceded to them an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland and the river St. Lawrence, and all other places where they had been accustomed to fish. All that the British plenipotentiaries could obtain for the American loyalists was, a provision that Congress should earnestly recommend to the legislatures of the respective States the most lenient consideration of their case, and a restitution of their confiscated property.

the count de Grasse, by granting a pension to four of his daughters, who came to America in extreme poverty, after the ruin of their family in the French Revolution." Warren, iii. 33."

\* "On the 19th of April, peace was proclaimed in the American army by the commander-in-chief, precisely eight years from the day of the first effusion of blood at Lexington."

---

Where were the negotiations for peace opened?

By whom on the part of Great Britain?

By whom on the part of the United States?

At what time did these negotiations terminate?

By this important instrument what was acknowledged?

What provision was obtained for the American loyalists?

## SECTION XXXVIII.

## CONCLUSION.

Thus terminated the American Revolutionary war,—a war which might have been prevented by the timely concession of freedom from internal taxation, as imposed by the British parliament, and by an abstinence on the part of the crown from a violation in this important particular of chartered rights. The confidential letters of Doctor Franklin evince that it was with extreme reluctance the American patriots adopted the measure of severing the colonies from the mother country. But when they had taken this decisive step, by the declaration of independence, they firmly resolved to abide by the consequences of their own act; and, with the single exception of Georgia, never, even in the most distressful contingencies of the war, did any public body of the provinces shew any disposition to resume their allegiance to the king of Great Britain. Still, it may be a matter of doubt, if, when we consider the conduct of the inhabitants of the Jerseys, when Washington was flying before General Howe, whether, had the British commanders restrained their troops with the strictness of discipline, and exercised towards the American people the conciliatory spirit evinced in Canada by Sir Guy Carleton, the fervor of resistance might not have been abated and subdued. But civil wars are always conducted with cruelty and rancor. The Americans were treated by the British soldiery not as enemies entitled to the courtesies of war, but as rebels, whose lives and property lay at the mercy of

---

In what way might the war have been prevented?

What do the confidential letters of Doctor Franklin evince?

After the declaration of independence how did the American patriots prosecute the War? What state is excepted?

What may be considered a matter of doubt?

How were the Americans treated by the British soldiery?

the victors. Hence devastation marked the track of the invading forces, while the inhabitants found their truest safety in resistance, and their best shelter in the republican camp. Nor will he who reads with attention the minute details of this eventful contest be surprised, that the British ministry persevered in the war when success might have appeared to be hopeless. It is now well known that George III., revolted from the idea of concession to his disobedient subjects, and was determined to put all to the hazard rather than acknowledge their independence. Lord North, at an early period of the war, had misgivings as to its ultimate success, but he had not firmness enough to give his sovereign unwelcome advice; whilst Lord George Germaine and the other ministers fully sympathised with the royal feelings, and entered heartily into the views of their master. They were apprised, from time to time, of the destitute condition of the American army, but living as they did in luxury, and familiarized as they were with the selfishness and venality of courts and political parties, they could not conceive the idea of men sacrificing health, property, and life, for their country's good. When Washington was beaten in the field, such men imagined that the affairs of the Congress were desperate, and flattered themselves that the great body of the colonists, wearied and disheartened by successive defeats, would be glad to accept the royal mercy, and to return to their allegiance. In these notions they were confirmed by the loyalists, who, giving

---

What marked the track of the invading forces?

From what idea did George the III., revolt?

About what had Lord North misgivings?

What is said of Lord Germaine and the other ministers?

What could they not conceive?

What did they imagine when Washington was beaten in the field?

In what did they flatter themselves?

utterance to their wishes, rather than stating the truth, afforded the most incorrect representations of the feelings and temper of their countrymen. Some of these coming over to England were received with favor in high circles, and by their insinuations kept up to the last a fatal delusion. These individuals at length fell the victims of their own error. Traitors to their country, they lost their property by acts of confiscation, and while they lived on the bounty of the British crown, they had the mortification to see the country which they had deserted, rise to an exalted rank amongst the nations of the earth.

It must also be admitted that the people of England sympathised with their Government up to a late period, in the feelings which prompted perseverance in this iniquitous war. Excessive loyalty to the crown; a certain undefined appetite for military achievements; resentment against the Americans for questioning British supremacy, strongly impressed the public mind, and rendered the war disgracefully popular in many quarters. Such sentiments were fostered and encouraged by the accession of France, Spain, and Holland to the cause of her revolted States, and the prospect of naval victories. We may reasonably indulge the hope, that the lesson then, and during the French Revolutionary war, taught by experience, and the subsequent improvement of the public mind, will prevent it from ever again joining its government in such a conspiracy against freedom and justice.

When the ministers of the king of France incited their master to enter into an alliance with the revolted colonies,

---

How were they confirmed in these notions?

What is said of the people of England?

How were these sentiments fostered?

In what may we reasonably indulge the hope?

they did so under the idea that the separation of those provinces from the parent State would ruin the resources of Great Britain. Events have proved how erroneous was their calculation. From her commercial intercourse with Independent America, Great Britain has derived more profit than she could have gained had her growth been stunted by the operation of restrictive laws. In a constitutional point of view, also, the disjunction of the thirteen provinces from the British empire will not be contemplated with any regret by those who are jealous of the influence of the crown, and who will reflect, that by the peace of 1782, it was deprived of the appointment of a host of governors, lieutenant-governors, chief justices, and other officers, selected from the scions of powerful families, and protected from the consequences of the abuse of their trusts by the influence of those whose dependants they are.

---

NOTE.—Some doubts having arisen as to whether the question which led to the separation of the colonies from the mother country was really confined to the point of taxation, and did not also involve the claim of Parliament to legislate generally for the colonies, the introduction into this note of a plain statement of the fact and the law may not be thought superfluous.

It will be clearly seen by a reference to the preceding narrative, that in the lengthened discussions which were carried on prior to the breaking out of hostilities, the point at issue was the right of Parliament to tax the colonies, and

---

Under what idea did the ministers of the king of France incite him to enter into an alliance with the colonies?

What have events proven?

From what has Great Britain derived more profit?

What is said in regard to a constitutional point of view?

not its general power of legislation for them. This power no one seems at that time to have thought of questioning for a moment; though all the colonies united in strenuously maintaining the exclusive right of taxing themselves, which they had enjoyed by charter and by constant usage. This was also the view of the subject uniformly taken by the parliamentary advocates of the American colonies; and had it not been deemed constitutionally sound, the colonies, jealous as they were of their political rights, would not have been content silently to acquiesce in it. ‘I assert, (said Lord Chatham on the 17th December, 1765,) I assert the authority of this country over the colonies to be sovereign and supreme, in every circumstance of government and legislation.’ But he added, ‘Taxation is no part of the governing or legislating power,—taxes are a voluntary grant of the people alone.’

Such was then the undisputed theory and practice of the constitution, even as recognised by the colonies themselves.

But it has been supposed that although, prior to the revolution, the colonies never questioned the supreme legislative authority of the mother country, yet that parliament had by some act of its own divested itself of this authority. This, however, is not the case. On the contrary, the Act of 6 Geo. III. c. 12, commonly called the Declaratory Act, distinctly lays it down as the law of the realm, ‘that the King, Lords, and Commons in Parliament assembled, had, hath, and of full right ought to have, full power and authority to make laws and statutes of sufficient force and validity to bind, in all cases whatsoever, the colonies subject to the British crown.’

The Act remains unrepealed, and is still in full force, with one single exception from the universality of its declaration, which will be found in the 18th George III. c. 12.

A clause in this statute enacts, that from and after its passing, the king and parliament will not impose any duty or tax on the colonies, except such as may be required for the regulation of commerce, and that the net produce of such duty or tax shall be applied to the use of each colony respectively in which it is levied, in such manner as the other duties collected by the authority of the assemblies of such colonies are applied.

That the practice of parliament has been in accordance with the principle of these declaratory enactments might be shown by a reference to numerous statutes subsequently enacted, which directly legislate for the colonies.

The authority of Mr. Burke may be added, as that of the person most jealous on the subject of colonial rights, for he, in fact was the parliamentary leader throughout the contest against the rights of the mother country, and sacrificed his seat at Bristol to his opinions in favor of the colonies. But in his celebrated speech on American taxation in 1774, he expressly maintains the supremacy of parliament, and the full extent of the rights claimed by the Declaratory Act, to which he holds the abandonment of the taxing power no exception. This forms the conclusion of the speech. (See Works, vol. ii, pp. 335 and 440, 8vo edition.) The same doctrines he continued to hold in 1775, when he renewed his resolutions of conciliation, and in 1780, when he retired from the representation of Bristol. In his famous speech upon the former occasion, he declares himself to wish as little as any man being to impair the smallest particle of the supreme authority of parliament, (Works, vol. iii, p. 109,) and in 1792, when he had become, if possible, more attached to the colonial party, both here and in France, he prepared a slave code, to be enacted in England for our West India colonies.

This statement proves, first, that the mother country never abandoned the legislative authority, except as regards the right of taxing; and secondly, that the colonists never even claimed any further exemption from the jurisdiction of parliament.

## APPENDIX.

---

### CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, ensure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

#### ARTICLE I.

##### SECTION 1.

1. All legislative powers herein granted, shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

##### SECTION 2.

1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one; Connecticut five; New York six; New Jersey four; Pennsylvania eight; Delaware one; Maryland six; Virginia ten; North Carolina five; South Carolina five; and Georgia three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill up such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

#### SECTION 3.

1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration

of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The vice president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in case of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment according to law.

#### SECTION 4.

1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in

each State by the legislature thereof; but the congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION 5.

1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION 6.

1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace,

be privileged from arrest, during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to or returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

#### SECTION 7.

1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objection at large on their journal, and proceed to re-consider it. If, after such re-consideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be re-considered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary, (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

#### SECTION 8.

The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises, shall be uniform throughout the United States:
2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States:
3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes:
4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.
5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures:
6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States:
7. To establish post offices and post roads:
8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries:
9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court: To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations:

10. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water:
11. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years:
12. To provide and maintain a navy.
13. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces:
14. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions:
15. To provide for organising, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress:
16. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings:— and,
17. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thercof.

#### SECTION 9.

1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall

not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to or from one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States, and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

#### SECTION 10.

1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress,

lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the neat produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

### SECTION 1.

1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence

of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the vice president.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president: neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice president, and the Congress may, by law, provide

for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

9. 'I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend, the Constitution of the United States.'

## SECTION 2.

1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur: and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the

United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

#### SECTION 3.

1. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

#### SECTION 4.

1. The president, vice president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

#### SECTION 1.

1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts, as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stat-

ed times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

#### SECTION 2.

1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority: to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states; and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before-mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

#### SECTION 3.

1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be

convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainer of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

### SECTION 1.

1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings, shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

### SECTION 2.

1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one state under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

### SECTION 3.

1. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state, nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

#### SECTION 4.

1. The United States shall guaranty to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the legislature, or of the executive, (when the legislature cannot be convened,) against domestic violence.

### ARTICLE V.

1. The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution; or on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by Conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article: and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

### ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution: but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

1. The ratification of the Conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention, by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,  
*President and deputy from Virginia.*

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

John Langdon,  
Nicholas Gilman.

NEW YORK.

Alexander Hamilton.

MASSACHUSETTS.

Nathaniel Gorman,  
Rufus King.

NEW JERSEY.

William Livingston,  
David Bearly,  
William Paterson,  
Jonathan Dayton.

CONNECTICUT.

William Samuel Johnson,  
Roger Sherman.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Benjamin Franklin,

Thomas Mifflin,  
 Robert Morris,  
 George Clymer,  
 Thomas Fitzsimons,  
 Jared Ingersoll,  
 James Wilson,  
 Governeur Morris.

## DELAWARE.

George Read,  
 Gunning Bedford, jun.  
 John Dickinson,  
 Richard Bassett,  
 Jacob Broom.

## MARYLAND.

James M'Henry,  
 Daniel of St. Tho. Jenifer,  
 Daniel Carroll. *Attest,*

## VIRGINIA.

John Blair,  
 James Madison, jun.

## NORTH CAROLINA.

William Blount,  
 Richard Dobbs Spaight,  
 Hugh Williamson.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

John Rutledge,  
 Chas. Cotesworth Pinckney,  
 Charles Pinckney,  
 Pierce Butler.

## GEORGIA.

William Few,  
 Abraham Baldwin,

WM. JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ART. 1. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Art. 2. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

Art. 3. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Art. 4. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Art. 5. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Art. 6. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously

ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation: to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of council for his defence.

Art. 7. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

Art. 8. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Art. 9. The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Art. 10. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

Art. 11. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Art. 12. § 1. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the Unit-

ed States, directed to the president of the Senate; the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed: and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

2. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice president, shall be the vice president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice president: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

3. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice president of the United States.

[ THE END. ]











LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 769 256 5

•